

GWM TANK

Thank you for choosing the Great Wall Motors vehicle.

The more familiar you become with your vehicle, the more you will like it and the better you will be able to use its features. Therefore, you are kindly required to: Read this manual carefully before using your vehicle. There are important tips about using your vehicle in this manual that will help you make the best use of your vehicle's technology. Additionally, you will get very useful information about driving safety, road safety and maintenance of your vehicle value.

We sincerely wish you a safe and happy journey!

25/11/2024

Overview

Contain instructions for use, explanation of symbol meanings, etc.

Vehicle statement

This vehicle is a multi-purpose model. It not only has the comfort of an urban SUV, but also has a certain degree of trafficability and extrication ability for the models equipped with all-terrain control system, differential lock and other equipment to meet the needs of users in a variety of scenarios.

For off-road driving, be sure to perform a series of all-terrain exercises on a fully licensed professional venue. All-terrain driving requires sufficient training and rich experience, or the installation of other configurations. Otherwise, there will be risks of personal injury and destruction of vehicles and articles. Please drive with caution. Before off-road driving, be sure to carefully survey the route and road conditions.

The driver should use all on-board functions under the premise of ensuring safety.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult your vehicle dealer.

Accessories, spare parts and modifications

Now we can buy not only genuine parts, but also a variety of other non-genuine parts and accessories that are suitable for our vehicle. The use of non-authentic spare parts and accessories may adversely affect vehicle safety, even if these products have been approved by the relevant national or regional authorities. Great Wall Motors do not afford any responsibility and do not offer any warranty certificate if the owner decides to install or replace non-authentic spare parts and accessories.

It is forbidden to modify vehicles with non-authentic products. Modifications with non-authentic products may affect vehicle operability, safety or durability and may even violate government regulations. In addition, vehicle damage and performance issues arising from modification are not covered by warranty of quality.

It is forbidden to modify suspension, braking system and so on, which may adversely affect the operate safety of vehicle.

It is forbidden to modify the fuse box of the vehicle. Otherwise, the electrical system may be adversely affected.

Modification to electronic components, software and circuits will affect their function and the normal operation of other related components, especially safety-related systems. These modifications will affect the operation safety of the vehicle and increase the risk of accidents and injury. Therefore, please do not modify pipeline, electrical parts and software.

Validity of this manual

All information provided in this manual is up to date at the time of publication. However, due to continuous improvement of the product, the contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice.

Depending on the vehicle specifications, vehicles shown in the figure may differ from your vehicle.

The display information (including pictures, icons, texts and so on) included in this manual are only for instructions. According to the vehicle model configuration, software version and theme settings, the actual information displayed may be different. Refer to the actual model for specific information.

About symbols

WARNING

This indicates a warning.

Failure to observe these warnings may result in serious injury or death. Such warnings tell you what to do or what not to do so as to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death.

CAUTION

This indicates a caution.

Failure to observe these cautions may result in damage to the vehicle or its equipment. Such cautions tell you what to do or what not to do so as to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle and its equipment.

NOTICE

This indicates a reminder.

Such tips contain helpful information that may be of use to you.

(▷ Page X)

This symbol indicates that more details can be seen on this page.

Tips for safety

WARNING

General precautions for your driving:

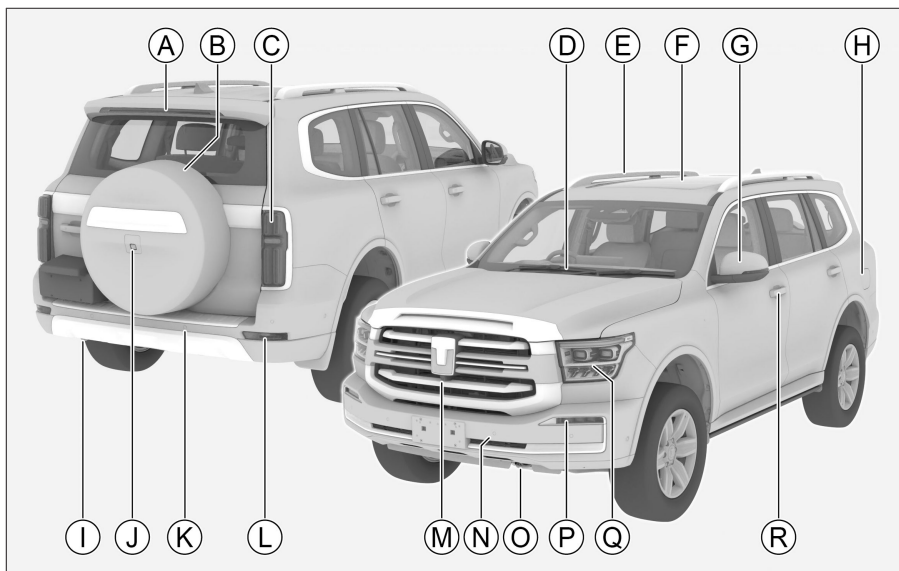
- ▷ Drive only when fully alert: the alcohol, drug, medicine or anesthetic will slow down driver's response time and affect judgment and coordination, which makes the vehicle get out of control and results in severe safety accidents.
- ▷ Drive carefully: be sure to drive carefully. Always keep an eye on improper movements of other drivers or pedestrians on the road so as to make timely judgments and prevent accidents.
- ▷ Concentrate on driving: be attentive when driving. Anything that distracts the driver's attention, such as adjusting control buttons, call up and answer a mobile phone or reading, may give rise to a crash accident and serious injury to you, passengers on the vehicle and other people.

WARNING

When getting out of the vehicle, do not leave children, pets or someone who needs help in the vehicle alone.

- ▷ Because the children, pets or someone who needs help cannot get out of the vehicle and save themselves. The temperature in the vehicle may be too high or too low in different weather, which may cause the passengers or pets in the vehicle injury even death.
- ▷ If the children or pets touch the key, the vehicle may move itself which is dangerous for yourselves and the vehicle, including starting the vehicle, releasing the parking brake, shifting gears, operating the doors and windows.

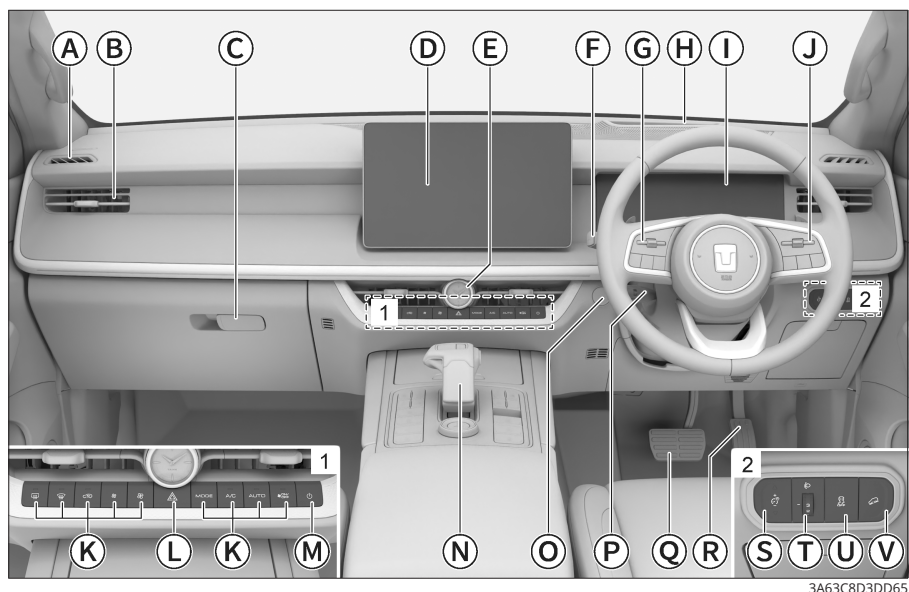
Appearance



B88EA7BC42D6

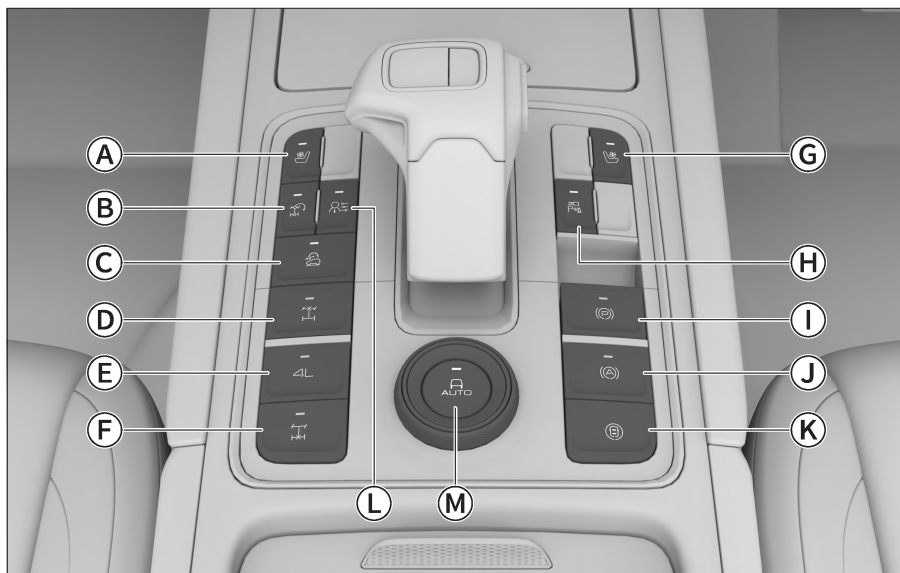
- Ⓐ High-mounted brake light
- Ⓑ Spare tyre 273
- Ⓒ Rear combination light 64
- Ⓓ Front wiper 71
- Ⓔ Roof rail 61
- Ⓕ Panoramic sunroof 38
- Ⓖ Side mirror 55
- Ⓗ Fuel tank door 45
- Ⓘ Rear tow hook 290
- Ⓝ Due to different model configurations, it may be used for:
- Ⓚ Anti-collision radar 154
- Ⓛ Rear fog light 64
- Ⓜ Around View Monitor (AVM) 155
- Ⓝ Anti-collision radar 154
- Ⓞ Front tow hook 290
- Ⓟ Front fog light 64
- Ⓠ Front headlight assembly 64
- Ⓡ Door handle 23
- Ⓢ Around View Monitor (AVM) 155
- Ⓣ Intelligent parking system 157
- Ⓤ Reverse tracking 160

Interior trim



- Ⓐ A/C defroster side outlet 83
- Ⓑ A/C side outlet 83
- Ⓒ Storage box 88
- Ⓓ Multimedia display screen 225
- Ⓔ Electronic clock
- Ⓕ Wiper control combination switch 71
- Ⓖ Multimedia control button 222
- Ⓗ Head-up display system (HUD) 199
- Ⓘ Instrument cluster 201
Instrument indicator lights 205
- Ⓝ Instrument cluster control button 203
- Ⓚ Air conditioning control panel 75
- Ⓛ Hazard warning light button 68
- Ⓜ Multimedia switch 223
- Ⓝ Shift lever 127
- Ⓞ Power supply switch 119
- Ⓟ Cruise control system lever, used for:
Adaptive cruise control system 184
Intelligent cruise control system 188
- Ⓠ Brake pedal
- Ⓡ Accelerator pedal
- Ⓢ Vehicle backlight brightness adjustment button 69
- Ⓣ Light height adjustment knob 68
- Ⓤ Electronic stability control button 195
- Ⓥ Hill descent control system button 192

Auxiliary instrument panel



7220D4F3060F

- Ⓐ Left front seat ventilation button 53
- Ⓑ The Tank turning button 143
- Ⓒ Off-road cruise control button 141
- Ⓓ Front axle differential lock button 150
- Ⓔ 4L button 135
- Ⓕ Rear axle differential lock button 148
- Ⓖ Right front seat ventilation button 53
- Ⓗ Depending on the configuration, the button is used for:
- Ⓘ Anti-collision radar 154
- Ⓢ Around View Monitor (AVM) 155
- Ⓣ Intelligent parking system 157
- Ⓡ Reverse tracking 160
- Ⓛ Electric parking button 123
- Ⓜ Automatic vehicle hold button 123
- Ⓚ Intelligent driving assist button 170
- Ⓛ Expert mode button 138
- Ⓜ All-terrain mode knob 135



Table of contents

1 Operation

This Chapter introduces the method for operating on-board vehicle equipment, such as keys, doors, windows and seats.

2 Driving

This Chapter introduces the driving information, such as vehicle start, gear shifting and instrument of the vehicle.

3 Audiovisual system

This Chapter introduces the Bluetooth telephone, system setting and other audio-visual system related information.

4 Safety

This Chapter introduces the functional equipment, such as anti-theft system and seat belts.

5 Emergency

This Chapter introduces the treatment methods for vehicle failures such as flat tyre and battery loss.

6 Maintenance

This Chapter introduces the routine inspection and regular maintenance of the vehicle.

7 Technical data

This Chapter introduces the vehicle parameters, identification number and other information.

8 Index

This Chapter introduces the alphabetical index in this manual.

Operation

Keys.....	18	Thermal protection function	35
About the key	18	Anti-pinch function	35
Buttons introduction	19	Delay function	36
Taking out the mechanical key	20	One-push raising function	36
Battery replacement.....	20	Window initialization	36
Door lock.....	22	Automatic window closing function	37
Door lock settings	22	37
Door handle lock and unlock	23	Rear window sunshades.....	37
Locking and unlocking with key buttons	24	Panoramic sunroof.....	38
Locking and unlocking with central control buttons	24	Opening and closing the sunroof ..	38
Unlocking with the interior handle	24	Opening and closing the sunshade	39
Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key	25	Anti-pinch function	39
Locking in emergencies.....	25	Thermal protection function	40
Tailgate	26	Delay function	40
Child locks	29	Linkage function.....	40
Auto driving lock	30	Automatic window closing on locking.....	40
Automatic resetting	30	Easy closing.....	40
Automatic unlock upon collision ...	30	Automatic sunroof closing.....	41
Electric side step	31	Initialisation	41
Side step settings	31	Bonnet.....	43
Unfolding/retracting the side step	31	Opening.....	43
Windows	34	Closing the bonnet	43
Driver window switch	34	Refuelling	45
Passenger side window switches ..	35	Refuelling method	45
		Fuel information	46
		Seats	47
		Headrests.....	47
		Front seat	48

Driving in foggy weather	104	Unlocking P gear position in an emergency	128
Driving in the rain	104	Crawling function	130
Fording drive.....	105	Starting off	130
In hot weather	106	Parking.....	131
Driving in cold season	107	Comfortable braking	133
Off-road driving alerts.....	109	Comfortable braking	133
Advice on driving during run-in period	112	Steering wheel assist modes.....	134
Tyres	112	Steering wheel assist mode switch- ing.....	134
Friction lining of brake pad.....	112	All-terrain control system.....	135
Hybrid vehicle.....	113	All-terrain control system introduc- tion	135
About hybrid vehicle.....	113	All-terrain mode switching	135
Power battery recovery.....	114	Expert mode	138
High-voltage warning signs	114	Operating precautions for driving 4WD vehicles	139
Energy recovery	117	Off-road cruise control system.....	141
Battery safety switch	117	Off-road cruise control.....	141
Emergency cut-off point	118	The Tank turning.....	143
Power supply switch.....	119	OFFROAD mode	145
Power supply mode switching	119	OFFROAD mode	145
Steering wheel unlock.....	119	Wading detection.....	147
Starting and shutting down the vehicle	121	Wading detection.....	147
Starting the vehicle	121	Differential lock switch.....	148
Shutting down the vehicle	122	Differential lock introduction	148
Parking brake	123	Rear axle differential lock	148
Tips for safety	123	Front axle differential lock.....	150
Electronic parking brake	123	Parking assist system	152
Gear shifting	126	Parking assist system sensor	152
Introduction to gear positions	126		
Gear shifting method	127		

Anti-collision radar.....	154	Anti-lock brake system.....	193
Around View Monitor (AVM).....	155	Electronic braking force distribution system	194
Intelligent parking system	157	Braking force assist system.....	194
Reverse tracking.....	160	Traction control system	194
Parking settings.....	161	Rollover prevention system.....	194
Tyre pressure monitoring system ..	163	Secondary collision mitigation system.....	194
Tyre pressure monitoring system introduction	163	HHC (Hill-start Hold Control).....	194
Tyre pressure monitoring and alert	164	Electronic power steering system	195
Fatigue driving reminder system....	165	Electronic stability control	195
Introduction of fatigue driving reminder	165	Dynamic stability assist system ..	196
Fatigue driving reminder instructions	165	Emission control system.....	197
Intelligent driving assist system.....	167	Reminder.....	197
Intelligent driving assist system sensor	167	Oxygen sensor.....	197
Intelligent driving instructions	170	Catalytic converter	197
Forward assist	170	Turbocharger.....	198
Rear side assist.....	177	Fuel evaporation control unit.....	198
Lane assist	180	Crankcase emission control unit	198
Traffic signs.....	182	On-board diagnostic system	198
Adaptive cruise control system...	184	Head up display system (HUD).....	199
Intelligent cruise control system	188	Head up display system introduction	199
Hill descent control system (HDC)..	192	Head-up display instructions	199
Hill descent control system introduction	192	Instrument panel	201
Hill descent control instructions.	192	Instrument panel overview	201
Driving assist system.....	193	Instrument panel control.....	203
Driving assist system safety tips.	193	Instrument panel indicator lights...	205
		Instrument indicator lights.....	205

Power management system	215
Introduction to the power supply management system.....	215
Information you should know.....	216

Audiovisual system

Related tips.....	220
Tips for safety	220
About the use	220
About the radio	220
About USB storage devices	220
About Bluetooth.....	221
Panel introduction.....	222
Multimedia control buttons	222
Multimedia switch.....	223
External devices	224
Display screen introduction	225
About multimedia display screen	225
Central display screen status bar	225
Function introduction	227
Homepage	227
Shortcut panel.....	228
Local media.....	228
Online media	229
System setting.....	229
Communication.....	234
Power.....	236
Voice assistant.....	236
I Space	237
Connection.....	237

Personal centre	239
Messages centre	240
Weather	240
Navigation.....	240

Safety

Seat belts	244
Safety tips.....	244
Wear the seat belt properly.....	245
Pretensioner seat belt.....	246
Three-point seat belt instructions	247
Front seat belt height adjusting..	247
When not using seat belts	248
Airbags	249
Tips for safety	249
Airbags.....	250
Front airbags	250
Front passenger side airbag switch	252
Side airbags	253
Curtain airbags.....	254
Child restraint system	256
Safety instructions for child seat	256
Fixing points for child seat.....	257
Recommended child seat type ...	258
Installation of child seat.....	260
Vehicle anti-theft system	264
System introduction	264
Instructions.....	264
Emergency shut-off system.....	266

Emergency shut-off system	266
Event data recorder.....	267
System introduction	267
Data reading	267
Data disclosure.....	267

Emergency

On-board tools.....	270
Location of toolkit.....	270
Vehicle lifting	272
Vehicle lifting position	272
Spare tyre.....	273
Spare tyre introduction.....	273
Removing and restoring	273
Replacing the spare tyre.....	276
Tyre failure symptom	276
Preparation for spare tyre replacement.....	276
Method to replace the spare tyre	277
In case of a vehicle accident.....	281
Traffic incidents occur to the vehicle	281
In case of a fire accident to the vehicle	282
In case of vehicle immersion accident.....	283
When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out.....	283
Jump start	285
Symptoms of a drained vehicle	

battery	285
Jump starting the vehicle	285
Engine overheating.....	287
Engine overheating.....	287
Towing.....	289
Towing with a professional vehicle	289
Tow hook.....	290
Tow rope	290
Vehicle fault	291
Emergency rescue system.....	293
Buttons introduction	293
Car networking function indicator lights	295

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance..	298
Engine compartment	299
Safety tips.....	299
Fluid level	300
Engine oil.....	301
Engine/electric drive system coolant	302
Brake fluid.....	303
Windscreen washer fluid	303
Radiator and fan	304
Battery	304
Safety labels and signs.....	305
Engine compartment warning label	305
Radiator cover warning label	305

Brake fluid reservoir warning sign	305
Battery warning label	306
Part replacement	307
Fuses	307
Replacing the front wiper blade .	309
Rear wiper blades replacement..	310
车灯保养.....	311
Vehicle maintenance	312
Tyre maintenance	312
Tailgate strut maintenance.....	315
Protection films for new vehicles	316
Sunroof maintenance.....	316
Exterior maintenance	317
Interior maintenance	320
Anti-corrosion measures	323
Long-term storage of the vehicle	324

Index

Alphabetical index	336
--------------------------	-----

Technical data

Vehicle identification	328
Vehicle identification number	328
Engine number (E20NA).....	329
Overall parameters	330
Basic parameters	330
Power parameters	330
Tyre specifications	331
Wheel parameters	331
Brake parameters	331
Seat parameters.....	332
Fluid parameters.....	332

1

Operation

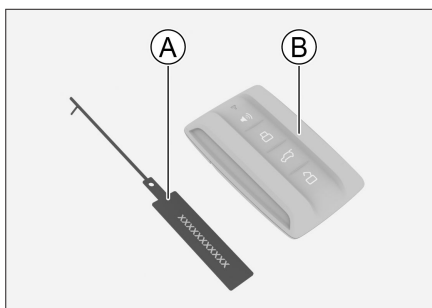
Keys	18
Door lock.....	22
Electric side step	31
Windows	34
Panoramic sunroof.....	38
Bonnet.....	43
Refuelling	45
Seats	47
Rearview mirrors	55
Steering wheel	58
Roof rack.....	61
Light control	63
Wiper control	71
A/C system.....	75
Mobile phone wireless charging	85
Interior equipment.....	88

Keys

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About the key



BB1182DFE914

(A) Key number tag

(B) Smart key

i NOTICE

This communication device conforms to standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

i NOTICE

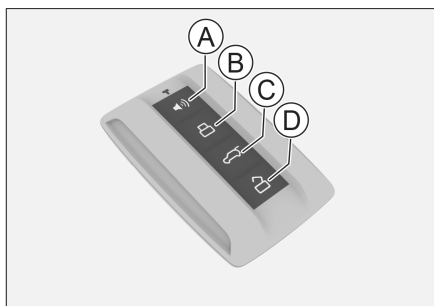
- › Store the key number tag in a safe place. The key number tag has a code necessary for getting a new mechanical key. You may only request for a new mechanical key from the authorised service centre by using this code.
- › When purchasing or transferring the vehicle, hand over the key number tag to the purchaser.

! CAUTION

The smart key contains electronic components and you should follow the following instructions to prevent damage to the smart key:

- › Do not place the key in a hot place, such as on the instrument panel.
- › Do not disassemble it randomly.
- › Do not use the key to forcefully strike other objects or drop it on the ground.
- › Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic cleaner.
- › Do not place the key with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as mobiles.

Buttons introduction



24C52319FAAE

- Ⓐ Vehicle locating button
- Ⓑ Lock button
- Ⓒ Tailgate control button
- Ⓓ Unlock button

Vehicle locating button

When all the doors, the tailgate and the hood are locked, press the vehicle locating button to turn on the locating function so that you can quickly find the vehicle in the parking lot and other places. Press it again during vehicle locating alarm to cancel the locating function.

i NOTICE

You can set the vehicle locating reminder function through the **【Car】** → **【Lights】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Lock button

Press the lock button, and the hazard warning lights flash once (or the horn sounds) to lock all the doors and the tailgate.

i NOTICE

When locking the door, if the hazard warning lights do not flash (or the horn does not sound), check whether all the doors, the tailgate and the hood are closed fully.

Tailgate control button

Press the tailgate control button on the key to unlock the tailgate. Press the tailgate micro switch to open the tailgate within 30 seconds after unlocking.

Unlock button

Press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights flash twice to unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

Remote starting

All the doors, the tailgate and the hood are closed, and the power supply is in OFF mode. After pressing the lock button, press the vehicle locating button within 1 second to start the vehicle remotely.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not modify the transmission frequency, enlarge transmission power (including additionally installing a radio frequency power amplifier), connect an external antenna, or use other transmitting antennas.

Keys

- › When using the function, do not cause harmful interference to all kinds of legitimate radio communication services. Once interference is detected, stop using the function and take measures to eliminate the interference before continued use.
- › Using the function may be subject to interference from various radio devices, resulting in a brief failure of function.

Taking out the mechanical key

1. Push the key cover in the direction shown and remove it.



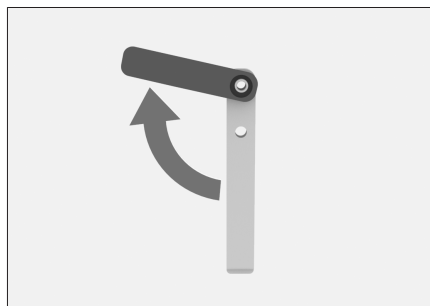
5151CB834D10

2. Push the mechanical key outwards and remove it.



2330BF74543D

3. Turn the handle of the mechanical key for normal use.



CFBF3442D903

⚠ CAUTION

The handle of the mechanical key can only be rotated in one direction, and the maximum opening angle is about 135°.

Battery replacement

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle key contains a button battery.

- › The button battery in the vehicle key is dangerous. Regardless it is a new battery or an old one, you should always keep it away from children.
- › If the button battery is swallowed or put into any part of the body, it may cause severe or fatal injury in 2 hours or less.
- › Seek medical attention if you suspect the battery has been swallowed or placed in any part of the body.

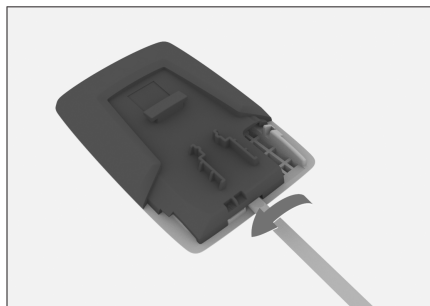
- › Please dispose of used batteries according to local laws. Incorrect disposal of used batteries will damage the environment.

⚠ CAUTION

- › During operation, be sure to dry your hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- › There is a precise circuit installed inside the smart key, which must be prevented from being damaged by impact, water, high temperature, humidity, exposure to sunlight, corrosive liquid, etc.
- › Do not touch or move any other parts.
- › The positive and negative terminals of the battery must be installed correctly.
- › Be careful not to lose parts when replacing the battery.

1. Take out the mechanical key.
(▷ Page 20)

2. Use a flat-head screwdriver to gently pry open the key and remove the back cover of the key.



FF60F1EF87AA

3. Check the position of old battery and directions of its positive and negative terminals, then take out old battery and replace it with new battery. Make sure that the directions of its positive and negative terminals are installed correctly.



5B31E7CD46C6

Battery model: CR2032

4. Assemble the key and test whether all the key buttons can work normally.

Door lock

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Door lock settings

You can set the door lock settings through the **【Car】** → **【Outside vehicle】** → **【Door lock】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Automatic locking as you leave vehicle】** : after the function is enabled, when all the doors, the tailgate, and the bonnet are completely closed, and a valid smart key is carried away from the vehicle, the vehicle lock automatically, and the turn signal lights flash once (or the horn sounds).
- › **【Automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle】** : after the function is enabled, when you bring a valid smart key close to the vehicle, the vehicle unlock automatically and the turn signal lights flash twice.

i NOTICE

- › When you carry a smart key to pass by the vehicle, the vehicle may trigger the function of the automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle. Please pay attention to the unlocking response of the vehicle and confirm that the vehicle is locked before leaving.
- › When the whole vehicle is locked, if you do not perform any unlocking operation on the vehicle within the next 48 hours, the function of the automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle will enter the sleep status. This function does not work in the sleep status. After the vehicle is unlocked using other methods, the sleep status will exit automatically and the function of the automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle will be resumed.
- › The sensing range of the function of the automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle is about 1.5 meters, and the sensing range of the function of the automatic locking as you approach vehicle is about 2.5 meters.

Door lock

- › When you carry a valid smart key within 3.5 meters of the vehicle, the function of the automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle or the automatic locking as you approach vehicle will enter the sleep status after about 15 minutes. Please use other methods to unlock or lock the door.

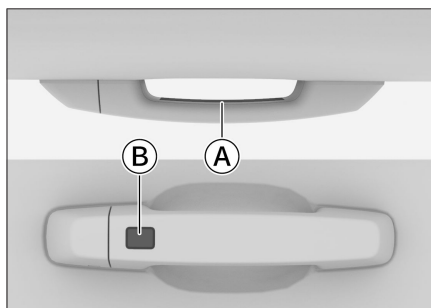
- › Before leaving the vehicle, please check whether all the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are fully closed. Otherwise, the vehicle cannot lock automatically.

- › When the battery is low, the function of the automatic unlocking as you approach vehicle or the automatic locking as you approach vehicle will enter the sleep status to prevent the vehicle from starting due to the undervoltage battery.

- › **【Unlock after power off】** : after the function is enabled, all the doors and the tailgate will unlock automatically when the vehicle is powered off.
- › **【Locking reminder】** : you can set the vehicle reminder methods for locking doors.

Door handle lock and unlock

When carrying the smart key with you, touch the front door handle sensor to lock or unlock the door.



(A) Unlock sensor

(B) Lock sensor

Unlocking

To unlock all the doors and the tailgate, touch the unlock sensor and the indicators flash twice.

Locking

Touch the lock sensor, and the turn indicator flashes once (or the horn sounds) to lock all the doors and tailgate.

i NOTICE

- › When the door is locked, if the turn indicator does not flash (or the horn does not sound), check whether all the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are closed fully.
- › When locking the door, touch the lock sensor for more than 1.5 seconds to ensure that the system can accurately locate the key position.

i NOTICE

- › Operate only the doors where the smart key is detected.

1

Operation

Door lock

- › Do not lock and unlock the doors at the same time.
- › If you wear gloves to operate the door handle, you may not be able to unlock or lock the doors.
- › The PEPS radio waves may be weak. Surrounding radio equipment or barriers can affect communication between the smart key and the vehicle, causing the system to malfunction.
- › The PEPS system will deactivate for 3 seconds after each successful lock or unlock operation.

About outer door handles

After washing the vehicle in the cold season, please promptly wipe off any water stains on the gaps of the outer door handles. The accumulated water stains may freeze on the handle movement mechanism, causing the door handle to jam. For example, after the door handle is pulled up, it may not be able to return to its original position, resulting in the door not being able to close properly. In this case, you can repeatedly pull the door handle several times to remove ice buildup.

Locking and unlocking with key buttons

See the key button introduction.

(▷ Page 19)

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons



FSB4D65A0D67

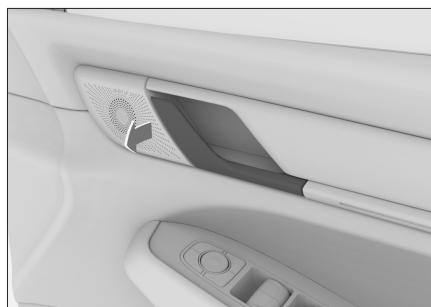
The central control button is located on the driver door.

When all the doors are closed, press the central control button to lock or unlock all doors.

If the button indicator light goes on, it means the door is locked.

If the button indicator light goes out, it means the door is unlocked.

Unlocking with the interior handle



DBF303BE8F69

When a vehicle door is locked, pulling the interior handle will unlock it. Pull the handle again to open the door.

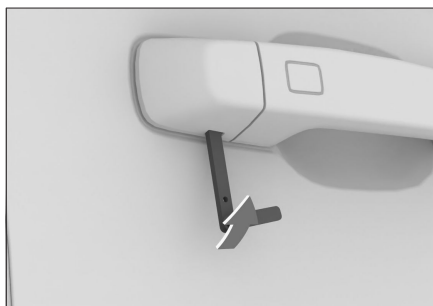
i NOTICE

Make sure that the child lock function is turned off when opening the rear door with the interior handle; otherwise, the rear door cannot be opened.

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key

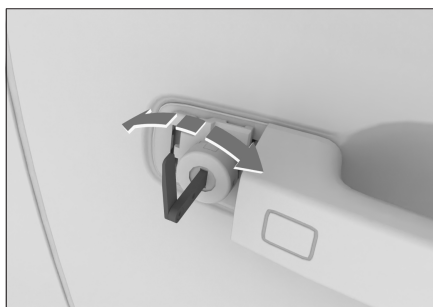
1. Insert the mechanical key into the hole under the door lock cover, pry the key in the direction of the arrow, and pry the cover down.

For how to get the mechanical key, see the Taking out the mechanical key.(▷ Page 20)



75B34D8395E1

2. Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, turn the key to lock or unlock the door.



2A7AE1BBF6D

i NOTICE

When the mechanical key is used to unlock the door, the vehicle anti-theft alarm may be triggered.(▷ Page 264)

Locking in emergencies



D589133BB9CB

Insert the mechanical key into the emergency keyhole of the door, turn the key in the direction of the arrow on the emergency keyhole, and then close the door to lock the door.

For how to get the mechanical key, see the Taking out the mechanical key.

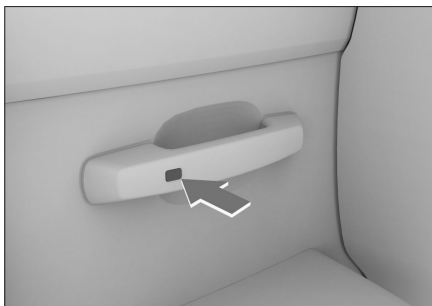
(▷ Page 20)

i NOTICE

If you need to use this method to lock the door, it means that the electric door lock system is faulty. In this case, please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

Door lock

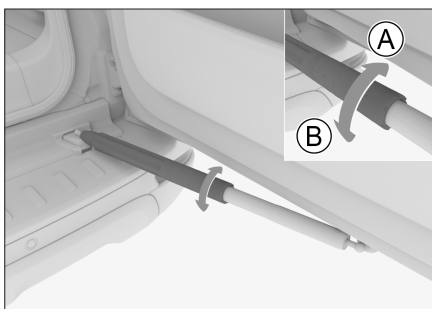
Tailgate



755459324115

- › When carrying the smart key with you, press the tailgate microswitch while pulling the tailgate outwards.
- › Press the tailgate control button on the key, and pull the tailgate outwards while pressing the tailgate microswitch within 30 seconds.
- › When the driver door is unlocked, press the tailgate microswitch while pulling the tailgate outwards.

Keeping the tailgate open



0EAD8EFD5C69

- Ⓐ Unlocking the tailgate check
- Ⓑ Locking the tailgate check

You can only use the tailgate check when it is completely open.

When closing the tailgate, be sure to rotate the tailgate check to the unlocking state.

⚠ CAUTION

When the tailgate is opened, the right tail light and retro-reflector will be blocked by the tailgate and the spare tyre. When parking on the road, use triangle warning signs or other equipment to remind other vehicles and pedestrians to take care in accordance with local laws if the tailgate is opened.

Closing the tailgate



F7702956F64C

- Ⓐ Tailgate interior handle
1. Check the tailgate check and confirm that it is unlocked.
 2. Pull the tailgate interior handle and release it before the tailgate is fully closed.
 3. Push the tailgate from the outside of the vehicle to close it completely.

NOTICE

For a vehicle equipped with the electric tailgate: when closing the tailgate, just move the tailgate gently into the lock, and the tailgate will automatically lock and completely close.

WARNING

The electric tailgate has no anti-pinch function. Do not put any part of your body into the door crack when the tailgate is closed or during the locking of the tailgate to avoid a danger of pinch injury.

If any part of your body or other objects are accidentally pinched, please quickly pull the door handle to open the tailgate.

CAUTION

The electric tailgate has no anti-pinch function. When the tailgate is closed or locked, make sure that there is no other foreign matter in the door crack. Otherwise, the electric tailgate may be damaged.

WARNING

- › When manually closing the tailgate, be sure to push the tailgate outside the vehicle to close it. Using the auxiliary handle to close the tailgate may easily pinch your hand and result in serious injury.

- › Never drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- › Never carry any passengers in the luggage area.
- › When opening or closing the tailgate with other persons standing in the vicinity of the tailgate, make sure that no injuries are caused to them.
- › When closing the tailgate, be careful not to catch any object like a bag or a necktie.
- › Do not allow children to operate the tailgate. Otherwise, an accidental injury may be caused.
- › Be cautious when opening or closing the tailgate in windy conditions as the tailgate may suddenly move under strong wind.
- › If the tailgate check is not locked, the tailgate may close. Opening or closing the tailgate on an incline requires more force than that on the level ground. Thus, you should watch out for it opening or closing by itself.

CAUTION

- › Never use excessive force when opening the tailgate; otherwise, it will easily damage the tailgate.
- › If the tailgate is frozen or covered in snow and ice, do not force it open. First use the A/C heating function to warm the interior of the vehicle, and then open the tailgate.

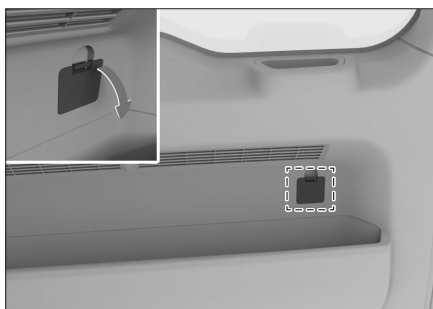
Door lock

If you must open the tailgate in an emergency, pour warm water on it to melt the ice. Once the frozen spots loosen, try to open it.

- › Do not install or paste any accessories on the tailgate check.
- › Do not lean, climb or place your luggage on the support for the tailgate; do not apply external force to it in the vertical direction.

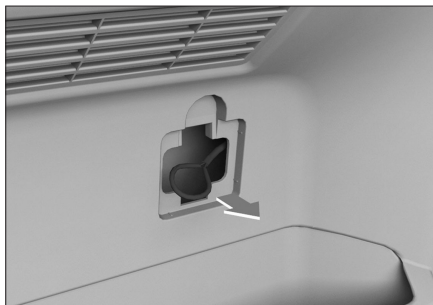
Emergency unlock

1. Enter the vehicle and open the emergency cover plate on the inner side of the tailgate.



E5E0C39C354F

2. Pull the cable and push the tailgate outwards to unlock and open it.



639C4F5BC7F2

i NOTICE

If this method is used to unlock the tailgate, it means that the vehicle is faulty. In this case, please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

Tailgate strut label




There is a warning label attached to the tailgate strut. It is located at the position shown in the figure.



8BCFBC8EDC03

The label contains a series of icons to visually convey the meanings as below:

Icon	Meaning
	Warning symbol
	No stepping
	No unauthorized repairs

Icon	Meaning
	It's a high pressure cylinder. Do not heat it at a high temperature, otherwise it may explode.
	No open flames. Keep it away from fire sources and smoking.
	Do not dispose of it carelessly.

CAUTION

- › Follow the information on the label to avoid damaging the strut or posing a threat to personal safety.
- › Due to differences in vehicle configurations or markets, the icons or content on the label may vary. Refer to the label on the actual vehicle.

Child locks

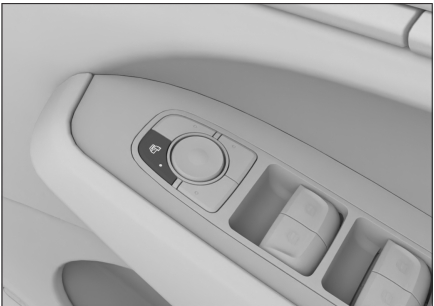
If there are children in the vehicle, we recommend that they sit on comparatively safer rear seats. Child locks are available with the rear doors to prevent inadvertent opening of the vehicle doors.

NOTICE

After the child lock is activated, the door can only be opened by pulling the door handle from outside.

Electric child locks

The child lock button is located on the driver door, as shown in the figure.



D578644589DE

Press the child lock button, and the indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the child lock function of the rear door has been activated; press the child lock button again, and the indicator light on the button goes out, indicating that the child lock function has been deactivated.

NOTICE

- › After the electric child lock function is turned on, the window switch on the rear door will be locked at the same time. In this case, the window switch on the rear door cannot be used to control the corresponding window.

Door lock

- Do not operate the child lock button and the rear interior handle at the same time. Before operating the child lock button, please make sure that other passengers have not pulled the rear interior handle. Otherwise, the problems such as failure to unlock the child lock may be caused.

Manual child locks



FAD19B46FFC1

Insert the mechanical key into the lock hole and rotate it as shown in the figure to activate the child lock function. Rotate reversely to deactivate the child lock function.

For how to get the mechanical key, see the Taking out the mechanical key.

(> Page 20)

⚠ WARNING

Only the rear doors are equipped with child locks. If a child sits alone on a rear seat, activate the child lock function on both rear doors at the same time to avoid accidents caused by accidental opening of the doors.

Auto driving lock

All the doors and the tailgate automatically lock when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

i NOTICE

Make sure that all doors and the tailgate are completely closed before driving.

Automatic resetting

When the bonnet is closed and all the doors as well as the tailgate are locked, if the power supply mode as well as the state of all the doors and the tailgate remain unchanged for a certain period of time after the doors are unlocked from outside (using a method other than the mechanical key), all the doors and the tailgate will automatically re-lock.

Automatic unlock upon collision

With the power in ON mode, when the system detects a collision, all doors will be unlocked automatically.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Side step settings

You can set the electric side step through the **【Car】** → **【Outside vehicle】** → **【Electric side step】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Electric side step】** : the electric pedal can only be used after the function is activated. After the function is turned off, the pedal remains retracted.
- › **【Roof mode】** : after the function is activated, the electric side step will remain in the unfolded state after being unfolded, facilitating the removal of objects from the roof or wiping the vehicle when the vehicle is stationary. When the vehicle is locked or the driving speed exceeds 5 km/h, the pedal will be retracted.

- › **【Special side step mode disabled】** : after the function is activated, when the all-terrain control system is switched to some special driving modes, the pedal remains retracted.

i NOTICE

- › When driving under harsh road conditions, it is recommended to turn on the special mode sidestep disabled switch to avoid the mud and sand adhering to the pedal and reduce pedal bumps.
- › Roof mode and special mode sidestep disabled mode cannot be turned on at the same time. When one of them is activated, the other one will be automatically turned off if it is turned on.

Unfolding/retracting the side step

In the sidestep setting interface, turn on the electric side step function, turn off the roof mode. When you enable (or disable, if the all-terrain mode is not in the special driving mode) the special mode, the steps can be normally unfolded and retracted.

Unfolding

- › When the doors are successfully unlocked from outside the vehicle, the steps on both sides are unfolded.

Electric side step

i NOTICE

- › If the doors are not operated within 30 seconds, the steps on both sides will be automatically retracted.
- › Open the doors on either side and close them all. If all the doors on the other side are closed, the steps on both sides will be retracted.
- › When the vehicle is stationary and the doors are unlocked, when the door is opened, the step on the corresponding side will be deployed.

Retracting

- › When the doors are successfully locked from outside the vehicle, the steps on both sides are retracted.
- › When the left or right doors are completely closed, the step on the corresponding side will retract.
- › When the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the steps on both sides will be retracted.

! WARNING

Do not step on the step when it is running. Otherwise, the user may stand unsteadily, causing a fall injury, and the service life of the step will be reduced.

Anti-pinch function

During the step retraction, if a foreign object is detected between the step and the vehicle body, the step will stop retracting and unfold.

! WARNING

Do not try to use any part of your body to test the step anti-pinch function. The anti-pinch function will not work when the step is fully retracted.

Initialisation

When the side step function is disordered (for example, when the doors are unlocked or locked, the side step does not move), it can be restored by the following operations:

Open and close the door, so that the side step on the corresponding side is unfolded first, and then retracted, and the side step initialization is completed.

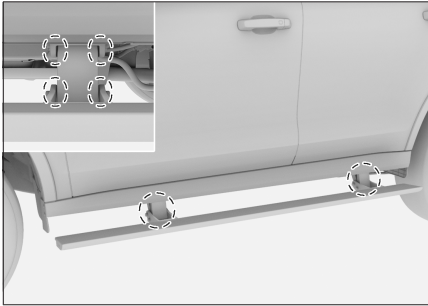
i NOTICE

- › If the side step is in the unfolded state, open and close the door to retract the side step before initializing.
- › When the side step function is disordered, the side steps on both sides need to be initialized.

Side step maintenance

Dust, stones and other debris adhering to the step hinge may cause abnormal noise. If the abnormal noise occurs, please unfold the step and use a high-pressure water gun to flush the front and rear hinges of the step. After drying, apply lubricant on the hinges.

Electric side step



0181D6068FC9

CAUTION

- › It is strictly prohibited to use corrosive solutions such as carburettor cleaning agent and loosening agent instead of lubricant.
- › After the above method, if there is still abnormal noise, please go to the authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

CAUTION

In the cold season, the steps may be frozen and cannot be unfolded. In this case, lock the door, and remove the ice or wait until the ice melts, and then unlock the door to check whether the function is restored.

NOTICE

In the cold season, the steps may run slowly.

1

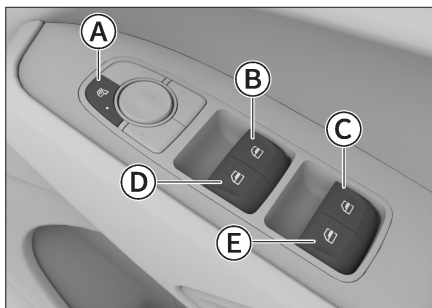
Operation

Windows

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driver window switch



991314F5CCD8

- (A) Window lock switch
- (B) Driver window switch
- (C) Rear right window switch
- (D) Front passenger window switch
- (E) Rear left window switch

Manual operation

To lower or raise the window, press or pull up and hold the corresponding switch until the window reaches the proper position. Then, release the switch.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the heads and hands of all passengers are away from the window before raising the window. Otherwise, an extremely serious injury will be caused.

i NOTICE

In low-temperature environment, freezing may occur between the window glass and the window frame, resulting in the failure of the glass to move normally. In this case, do not force to operate it to avoid damage to the lift mechanism. After the interior temperature rises and the ice on the glass thaws, the glass can be raised and lowered normally.

One-push raising or lowering

Press the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically lower completely. To stop it halfway, just pull up the switch.

Pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically raise completely. To stop it halfway, just press the switch.

NOTICE

If the window function is disordered due to battery failure or other reasons, the one-push raising or lowering function cannot automatically raise the window. At this time, the window needs to be initialized.

Emergency raising function

In the case of an emergency, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point and hold it, and the window will trigger the emergency raising function. Then, the window anti-pinch function will not work at this time.

Locking windows

When the window lock switch is pressed, the window switches on the rear door cannot be used to control the corresponding windows.

Pressing the window lock switch again will recover the function of the rear window switches.

WARNING

When there are children in the vehicle, it is recommended that they should sit in the relatively safe rear seats and the window lock function should be enabled.

Passenger side window switches

On the handrail of the passenger side door, there is a window switch which can be used to open or close the corresponding window.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection may be triggered to protect the glass lifter motor after repeated operation of the window switch. At this time, the window switch will temporarily fail. The window switch automatically returns to normal after the lifter motor cools down.

Anti-pinch function

During the process of raising the window, if there is an obstacle between the window frame and the window, when the pressure reaches a certain value, the window will stop raising and automatically descend a certain distance.

WARNING

- › Never test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- › At the moment when the window is completely raised, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.
- › When the window triggers the emergency raising function, the window anti-pinch function will not work.

Windows

i NOTICE

- › Under severe conditions, such as low temperature and severe bumping, the anti-pinch function may be triggered in the process of window glass raising, and the window cannot be raised smoothly. At this time, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point to close the window.
- › When the one-push raising or lowering function is abnormal, the anti-pinch function will be disabled at the same time, and initialization can be performed to restore it to normal.

i NOTICE

- › If the window function is disordered due to battery failure or other reasons, the one-push raising function cannot automatically raise the window. At this time, the window needs to be initialized.
- › If an obstacle in the window is found during the automatic raising, the anti-pinch function may be triggered, causing the window to fail to raise.
- › You must confirm that the windows are completely closed before leaving.

Delay function

The windows can still be operated within a few seconds after the power supply is switched to OFF.

One-push raising function

With the power supply in OFF mode and all the doors and the tailgate closed, press and hold the lock button on the key or the lock sensor on the door handle and all the windows will be automatically closed.

Press the key unlock or lock button to make a pause in the lift during automatic window raise.

Window initialization

When the window-related function is abnormal, you can reset it through the following operations:

1. Set the power supply to the ON mode.
2. Pull up the window switch equipped with one-push raising or lowering function beyond the pressure point until the window is completely closed and then hold for about 3 seconds.
3. Operate the window switch again so that the window goes through the one-push raising and one-push lowering.

i NOTICE

When the one-push raising or lowering function is disordered or every time the battery is disconnected and re-energized, windows with one-push function need to be initialized.

Automatic window closing function

You can set the automatic window closing function, including **【Speed-based automatic window closing】** and **【Automatic window closing on locking】** through the **【Car】** → **【Outside vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Speed-based automatic window closing】** : after the function is enabled, if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed, all windows are automatically closed.
- › **【Automatic window closing on locking】** : after the function is enabled, all windows are automatically closed when the vehicle is locked.

i NOTICE

If an obstacle in the window is found during the automatic closing, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that all windows are completely closed.

Rear window sunshades

The window sunshade can block the light and enhance the privacy of the rear space.

When using, pull up the handle and hang it into the hook on the top of the window.



1F7D4BCBAD2D

Panoramic sunroof

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening and closing the sunroof

You can open and close the sunroof through the **【Car】** → **【Outside vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the front multimedia display screen.



4DEC9F9ED9F4

Manual operation

- › Pull the sunroof button backward and hold, the sunroof gradually tilts to open; pull the sunroof button backward again and hold, the sunroof gradually opens.

- › Push the sunroof button forward and hold, and the sunroof gradually closes.
- › To stop the sunroof midway, release the button.

Automatic operation

- › Pull the sunroof button backwards and release it, and the sunroof will automatically tilt to open to the maximum angle and then stop; pull the sunroof button backwards again and release it, and the sunroof will automatically open completely.
- › Push the sunroof button forward and release it, and the sunroof will automatically close completely.
- › To stop the sunroof midway, push or pull the switch again.

i NOTICE

The sunroof and sunshade are in the closed state. When the operating sunroof is opened, the sunshade is opened for a certain distance, and then the sunroof is opened.

! WARNING

- › Do not extend your hands or head outside through the sunroof when driving. Accidental contact with outside objects or emergency braking may cause severe injury or even death.

Panoramic sunroof

- › When closing the sunroof, be careful not to pinch other passengers' hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injury.
- › Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

Opening and closing the sunshade

You can open and close the sunshade through the **【Car】** → **【Outside vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the front multimedia display screen.



E8F2EC3DCF47

Manual operation

- › Pull and hold the sunshade button backwards, and the sunshade gradually opens.
- › Push and hold the sunshade button forwards, and the sunshade gradually closes.
- › To stop the sunshade midway, release the button.

Automatic operation

- › Pull the sunshade button backwards and release it, and the sunshade will automatically open.
- › Push the sunshade button forwards and release it, and the sunshade will automatically close.
- › To stop the sunshade midway, push or pull the button again.

⚠ WARNING

- › When closing the sunshade, be careful not to pinch other passengers' hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injury.
- › Do not allow children to operate the sunshade.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not squeeze the sunroof shade with force, so as to prevent the sunshade from falling off or being damaged.
- › When parking a vehicle for a long time, close the sunroof shade to prevent the inside decoration from being damaged due to the inside high temperature if it is exposed to the sun for a long time.

Anti-pinch function

If the sunroof or sunshade encounters an obstruction during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and return a certain distance.

1

Operation

Panoramic sunroof

⚠ WARNING

- › Despite the anti-pinch function, there is still a risk of pinching.
In special cases (e.g. if the obstruction is thin), the closing process cannot be interrupted. Therefore, despite the anti-pinch function, it is important to ensure that the closing area of the sunroof and sunshade remains unobstructed.
- › Do not attempt to use any part of your body to test the anti-pinch function.
- › At the moment when the sunroof and sunshade are completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if any object is stuck.
- › When closing the sunroof and sunshade manually, the anti-pinch function will not work. Be careful not to pinch fingers or other body parts.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection function may be triggered to protect the sunroof motor after repeated operation of the sunroof switch. At this time, the sun roof function will be temporarily disabled, and the sunroof will fail to be operated. The sunroof switch will automatically return to normal after the motor cools down.

Delay function

The sunroof and sunshade can still be operated within a few seconds after the power supply mode is switched to OFF.

Linkage function

When the sunshade is in the close position, in the process of opening the sunroof, the system will automatically adjust the opening degree of the sunshade according to the opening of the sunroof.

Automatic window closing on locking

You can set the automatic window closing on locking function through the **【Car】 → 【Outside vehicle】 → 【Windows】** interface on the multimedia display screen. After the function is turned on, all windows will automatically close when the vehicle is successfully locked.

i NOTICE

If the sunroof encounters obstacles during the automatic closing process, the anti-pinch function may be triggered. It must be confirmed that the sunroof is completely closed before leaving.

Easy closing

With the power supply in OFF mode and all the doors and the tailgate closed, press and hold the lock button on the key or the lock sensor on the door handle to automatically close the sunroof.

Panoramic sunroof

WARNING

Make sure that heads, hands, necks and other parts of all occupants are away from the sunroof before using the easy closing function to close the sunroof. Otherwise serious injuries may occur.

NOTICE

If an obstacle between the window glass and the window frame is found during the automatic raising of the window glass, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that the windows are completely raised before leaving.

Automatic sunroof closing

- › When the power supply is in OFF mode, if the rainfall and light sensor senses rain or snow, etc., the sunroof will be automatically closed.

NOTICE

In case of the little rain, the sunroof may not be closed automatically. It must be confirmed that the sunroof is completely closed before leaving.

- › The sunroof closes automatically when the speed exceeds 120 km/h for more than 3 s during driving.

NOTICE

- › If the vehicle speed drops below 120 km/h within 3 s, the sunroof will not be closed automatically.
- › If the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h during sunroof operation, the sunroof will remain in its original state of operation and will not trigger the automatic sunroof closing function.
- › If the sunroof switch is operated during automatic sunroof closing, the automatic sunroof closing function will be interrupted.
- › If the automatic sunroof closing function has been triggered or interrupted while driving, the vehicle must accelerate again from a standstill to over 120 km/h for more than 3 s before the automatic sunroof closing function can be triggered again.

Initialisation

If the system is in disorder, it can be recovered through the following operations:

1. When the power supply is in the ON mode, close the sunroof and sunshade completely.
2. Push the sunroof button forwards and hold it until the sunroof and sunshade move separately and are accompanied by a "click" sound (which is a normal phenomenon).

Panoramic sunroof

3. Keep the push the sunroof button forward, so that the sunroof and sunshade are opened and then fully closed, and the initialization is completed.

1

Operation

i NOTICE

To avoid the sunroof initialisation failure due to undervoltage battery, it is recommended to start the vehicle before performing the sunroof initialization operation.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

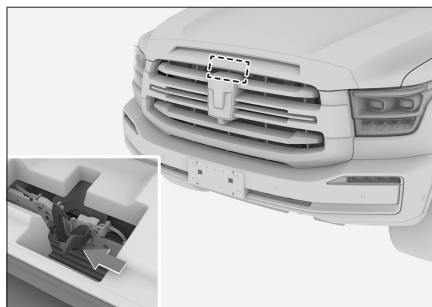
Opening

1. By pulling the handle located under the driver side instrument panel, the hood will pop out a gap.



ADA7F177E7F4

2. Reach your hand into the gap, pull the handle to the left, and lift the engine hood. The hood will automatically rise to open.



6F04A7D91D83

i NOTICE

In the low temperature environment, the hood strut may not be able to support the hood automatically. When such a situation occurs, you may lift the hood manually to open it.

Closing the bonnet

Pull the bonnet downwards and close it by pressing it downwards with the appropriate force at a height of 20 to 30 cm from the lock.

! WARNING

Make sure that the bonnet is fully closed and secured prior to driving. Otherwise it may open unexpectedly during the vehicle running, leading to an accident.

Bonnet

CAUTION

- › Before closing the bonnet, make sure that there is no debris left inside the engine compartment.
- › Do not use excessive force when closing the bonnet. Failure to do so may deform the bonnet.

1

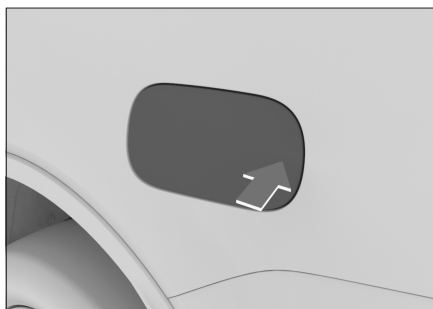
Operation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

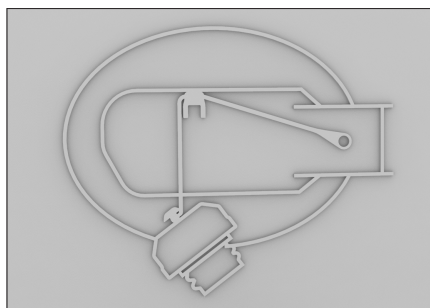
Refuelling method

1. When the driver door is unlocked, press the end of the fuel tank door near the rear end of the vehicle, and the fuel tank door will pop open gently.



68B553962C60

2. Turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to open it, and fix the fuel tank cap cable to the fuel tank door so as to avoid making the vehicle body dirty.



1C248C46F407

⚠ WARNING

- › When loosening the fuel tank cap, do not continue if you hear a whooshing sound. Once the sound disappears, you can open it slowly.

In hot weather, high-pressure fuel may be sprayed from the fuel tank filler due to large internal pressure, resulting in personal injury.

- › Take care of such matters during refuelling:

The engine must be shut down.

No smoking or naked flames are allowed in the vicinity of the vehicle.

It is not allowed to answer or make calls.

Adhere to all precautions posted at the petrol station.

Refuelling

1

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not add too much fuel; just add it until the first automatic stop of the fuel nozzle. Otherwise, the fuel can easily enter into the carbon canister, shortening its service life.
- › Do not allow fuel to splash on the vehicle while refuelling. Otherwise, the painted surfaces may be corroded.
- › Use only the designated fuel.

3. After refuelling, put the fuel tank cap back to its original position and rotate it clockwise until you hear a “click” sound, indicating that the fuel tank cap has been installed in place.
4. Close the fuel door.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the fuel door violently, so as to prevent the locking mechanism from deformation and break which may result in the failure to open or close the fuel door.

i NOTICE

Please close the fuel door completely before locking the vehicle door. Otherwise, the fuel door may be stuck and cannot be opened. If this case happens, please try to press the fuel door, and then press the unlock button on the key.

Fuel information

Item	Data
Fuel specifications	E10/E20 (Thailand) Unleaded petrol 92 and above (Indonesia)
Fuel tank capacity [L] (reference value)	75

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Headrests

When the headrest centre height is aligned with the top of the driver's or passenger's ears, it is at maximum efficiency.

⚠ WARNING

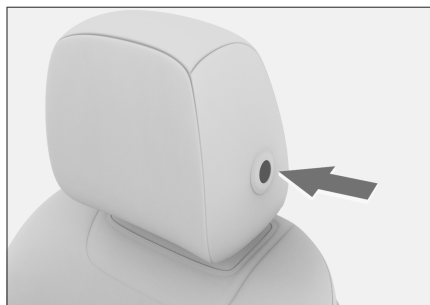
- › The headrest must not be adjusted while the vehicle is being driven.
- › The headrest must not be removed while the vehicle is being driven. If this is done and a collision occurs, the neck of the driver or passenger neck will be subject to major strain, potentially resulting in serious injury or even death.

i NOTICE

- › The lowest position of the headrest is not its using position. The headrest must be ascended to the locked position before use.

- › After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest to make sure it is locked firmly.

Front headrest adjustment



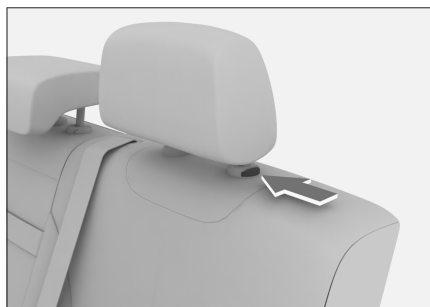
59D7D382EB76

Press and hold the headrest adjust button to make the headrest height adjustment and forwards and backwards adjustment of the headrest.

Directly lift the headrest upwards or push it forwards to raise the headrest or adjust it forwards.

Second row headrest adjustment

Headrest height adjustment



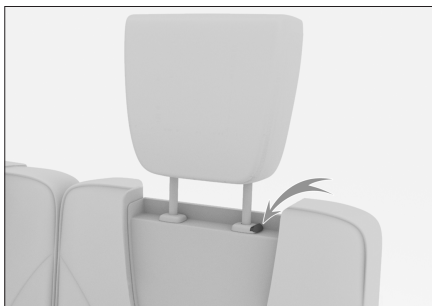
D70FA2DAF974

- › To raise the headrest, directly lift the headrest to the desired position.

Seats

- › To lower the headrest, push the headrest down to the desired position while pressing and holding the headrest adjust button.
- › To remove the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjust button and pull out the headrest.

Third row headrest adjustment



16A9AD5C8057

- › To raise the headrest, directly lift the headrest to the locked position.
- › To lower the headrest, push the headrest down to the bottom while pressing and holding the headrest adjust button.
- › To remove the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjust button and pull out the headrest.

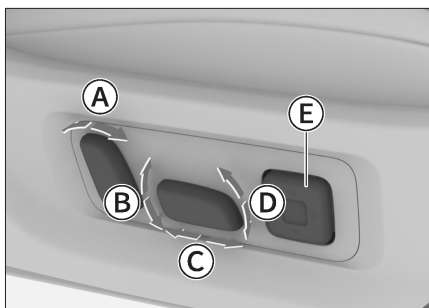
Front seat

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the seat when driving.

- › Make sure that the driver seat is adjusted to a correct position before driving. Otherwise, this may easily cause incorrect operations and may even lead to accidents, and the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices cannot be effectively used.
- › Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively to prevent the passenger from sliding out from the lap belt when a collision happens. The seat belt can provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.

Power seat



1FC57DDF040F

- Ⓐ Backrest inclination angle adjustment
- Ⓑ Seat height adjustment
- Ⓒ Forward/backward adjustment of the seats
- Ⓓ Seat cushion angle adjustment
- Ⓔ Lumbar support adjustment

Press and hold the front and rear buttons to reinforce or weaken the lumbar support.

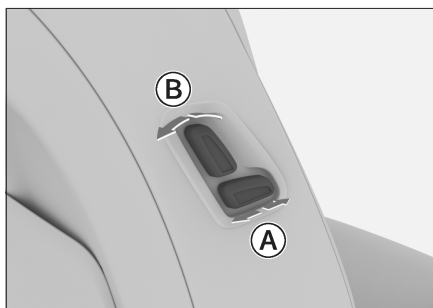
Press and hold the up and down buttons to raise or lower the lumbar support.

i NOTICE

Some functions are only available for the driver seat.

Convenient adjustment of front passenger seat

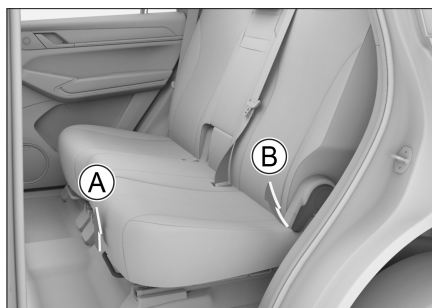
The convenient adjustment switch is located on the inner side of the front passenger seat backrest (between the two front seats). You can operate it in the driver's position or the second row seat position.



70961F771CEC

- Ⓐ Forward/backward adjustment of the seats
- Ⓑ Backrest inclination angle adjustment

Second row seat



2F3A0C664C56

- Ⓐ Seat position adjustment
- Ⓑ Backrest adjustment

Seat position adjustment

Pull up the seat position adjustment lever, slide the seat back and forth to the desired position, and then release the adjustment lever.

⚠ CAUTION

After adjusting the seat, make sure that it is locked firmly.

Backrest folding

After the backrest of the second row seat is folded, more storage space can be obtained. The left or right part of the backrest can be folded separately.

Pull up the seat backrest adjustment lever to fold the unlocked backrest forwards.

Seats

i NOTICE

- › Before folding, adjust the headrest to an appropriate position to avoid interference with the seat cushion or front seat.
- › For the vehicles equipped with seat belt fixing clips, when the seat belt is not used, it can be secured on the fixing clip to avoid affecting seat backrest folding.
- › Remove all objects from the seat before folding the seat backrest.
- › Do not place heavy objects on the folded backrest.

! WARNING

- › Do not adjust or fold the seat while the vehicle is running.
- › No one is allowed to sit on a folded seat backrest or in the luggage area.
- › Children are prohibited from entering the luggage area.

Backrest restoring

Adjust the seat belt to avoid it being stuck under the seat during backrest recovery.

Pull up the seat backrest adjustment lever to restore the seat backrest to the using position. Shake the seat backrest slightly back and forth to ensure that it is locked in place.

Backrest angle adjustment

Move your body tightly against the backrest, pull up the adjustment lever of the seat backrest, lean back to adjust the backrest to the required angle, and release the adjustment lever.

! CAUTION

Please ascend the backrest adjustment lever completely before adjusting the backrest. Otherwise, the seat mechanical failures may be caused.

Accessing to and leaving the third row seats



FA3632B02A04

Pull the handgrip on the upper right (or upper left) of the second-row seat backrest, first flip the right (or left) seat of the second row forwards as a whole, and then move forward to the front end. At this time, you can enter or leave the third-row seats.

After the passenger enters or leaves the vehicle, first move the right (or left) seat of the second row backwards to the using position, then flip the seat backrest backwards as a whole and make sure that it is locked firmly.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that there are no passengers on the seat of the second row when you flip it.

Armrest



C0A4D55D6BB2

Pull the rope outwards to lower the second row armrests to provide elbow support for the second-row passengers and make the arms feel more comfortable.

Third-row seat

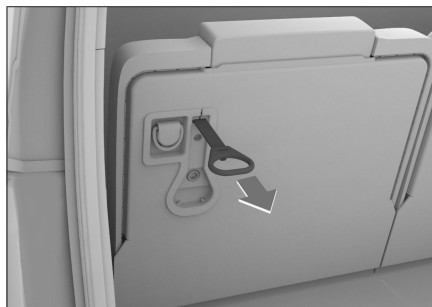
i NOTICE

For the vehicles equipped with seat belt fixing clips, when the seat belt is not used, it can be secured on the fixing clip to avoid affecting seat adjustment and backrest folding.

Manual seat

Lower all headrests to the lowest position before folding the seat.

Pull the release ring outwards and hold it, then push the seat backrest forwards to fold the third-row seat.

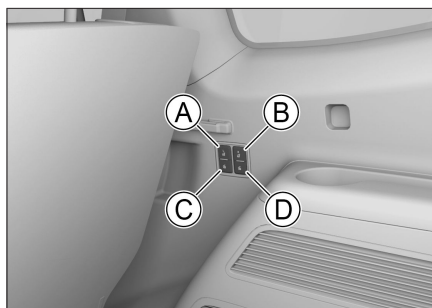


93DC4B3781AD

Electric seat

Lower all headrests to the lowest position before folding the seat.

The third-row seat front adjustment button is located on the right trim plate in front of the third-row seat.

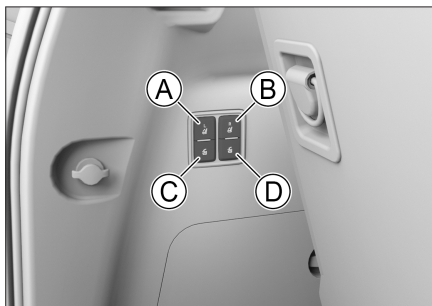


F6EFF241FF4A

- Ⓐ Left seat return button
- Ⓑ Right seat return button
- Ⓒ Left seat folding button
- Ⓓ Right seat folding button

Seats

The third-row seat rear adjustment button is located on the left trim plate of the luggage area.



- Ⓐ Left seat return button
- Ⓑ Right seat return button
- Ⓒ Left seat folding button
- Ⓓ Right seat folding button

⚠ WARNING

Please observe the following precautions when folding the third-row seat. Otherwise, serious injury or death may be caused.

- › Before folding the seat, check the area around the seat and make sure that there is no luggage or other people.
- › Do not place your hands or feet into moving seat parts.
- › Do not allow children to operate the seat.

⚠ CAUTION

When folding and restoring the third-row seat, first move the second-row seat forwards as a whole or flip the backrest of the second-row seat forwards by a certain angle to avoid collision with the second-row seat and cause seat damage.

Seats settings

You can set the functions related to the driver's seat through the **【Car】** → **【In-vehicle】** → **【Driver's seat】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Driver's seat memory/mirrors memory/steering wheel memory】** : touch any memory button for a long time to store the current positions of the driver's seat, rearview mirrors and steering wheel, and the system prompts that the position is saved successfully. Touch any memory button to recall the driver's seat, rearview mirrors, and steering wheel positions stored by the button.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle speed exceeds 7 km/h, to avoid distracting the driver and hindering the safe driving, the driver's seat, rearview mirrors, and steering wheel memory functions on the multimedia display screen will be deactivated.

- › **【Driver's seat/steering wheel welcome】** : after the function is turned on, when the power supply mode is OFF and the driver side door is opened, the driver's seat/steering wheel will automatically move to a position that is convenient for getting on and off the vehicle. When the power supply mode is ON and the driver side door is closed, the driver's seat/steering wheel will automatically return to the position used last time.

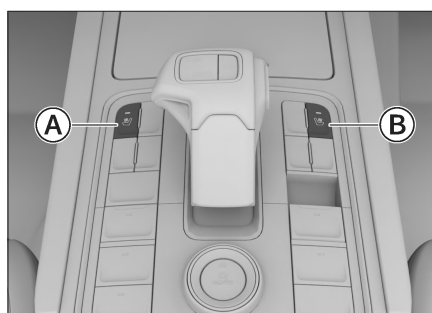
i NOTICE

- › During the automatic movement and return of the driver's seat/steering wheel, if the driver's seat/steering wheel adjustment switch is operated, the driver's seat/steering wheel will execute the command of the adjustment switch.
- › After the driver's seat/steering wheel automatically moves to a position that is convenient for getting on and off the vehicle, the welcome function will not return to the position used last time if any adjustment is made to the driver's seat/steering wheel.
- › **【Driver's seat massage】** : after the function is enabled, you can set the driver's seat massage mode and massage intensity.

You can set the front passenger seat memory, welcome and massage functions through the **【Car】** → **【In-vehicle】** → **【Front passenger seat】** interface on the multimedia display screen. The setting method is the same as the driver's seat.

Front seats ventilation

Setting via buttons



Ⓐ Left seat ventilation button

Ⓑ Right seat ventilation button

When the power supply is in the ON mode, press the left or right button on the auxiliary instrument panel to set the corresponding seat ventilation function.

Setting via multimedia display screen

Tap the seat icon at the bottom to set the corresponding seat ventilation function on the front A/C interface of the multimedia display screen.

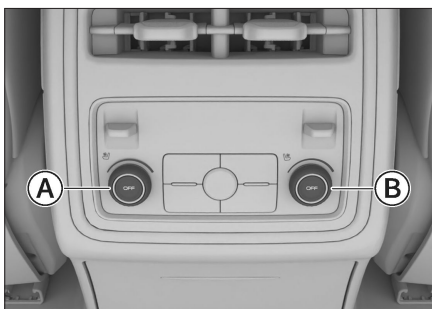
Seats

Second row seat ventilation

Setting via knob

1

Operation



08CC4CC60802

Ⓐ Left knob

Ⓑ Right knob

When the power supply is in the ON mode, turn the knob to set the corresponding seat ventilation function.

Press the OFF button to turn off the ventilation function of the corresponding seat.

Setting via multimedia display screen

Tap the seat icon at the bottom to set the corresponding seat ventilation function on the rear A/C interface of the multimedia display screen.

Rearview mirrors

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror



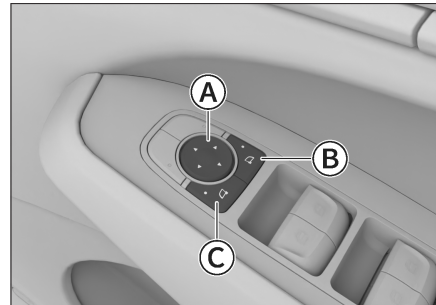
65068CD62229

The interior rearview mirror will automatically reduce the reflection according to the light intensity of the headlights of the vehicle behind.

i NOTICE

After the R gear position is engaged, the mirror reflectivity of the interior rearview mirror remains in the highest state, which is convenient for observing the situation behind the vehicle.

Side mirrors adjustment



338CFA4DFA38

- Ⓐ Mirror adjustment button
- Ⓑ Right side mirror selection button
- Ⓒ Left side mirror selection button

Mirror adjustment

1. Press the side mirror selection button to select the left (L) or right (R) side mirror. If the button indicator light comes on, the mirror has entered the selected state.
2. Press the front, rear, left and right positions of mirror adjustment button to adjust the angle of the selected side mirror.
3. After the adjustment, press the side mirror selection button again, the button indicator light will go out and the mirror exits the selected state.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Otherwise, errors in control can lead to accidents and serious injury or death.

Rearview mirrors

Electric folding



294E7171EBE4

Press the left and right side mirror selection buttons simultaneously, and the side mirrors will automatically fold up. Press them again simultaneously and the side mirrors will automatically unfold.

⚠ WARNING

- › Before driving, you must unfold the side mirrors and adjust them appropriately.
- › Be careful of your fingers when moving the side mirrors to avoid injury or damage to the side mirror.

Side mirrors settings

You can set the side mirrors settings through the **【Car】** → **【Outside vehicle】** → **【Mirrors】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Side mirror folding

You can set the folding mode of the side mirrors.

When the **【Auto】** mode is set, the folding and unfolding of the side mirrors are linked with the locking and unlocking of the vehicle.

Side mirror

You can set the side mirrors to unfolding or folding.

Side mirror auto adjust when reversing

You can choose to disable or set it to the driver, passenger and both sides. After the function is turned on, the side mirrors can be automatically adjusted to the stored position suitable for reversing by engaging the R gear position; the side mirrors can be automatically restored to the position before reversing by disengaging the R gear position;

Saving the position of the side mirror auto adjust when reversing

1. As needed, turn on the side mirrors reversing mode on the driver, passenger or both sides.
2. Engage in the R gear position and adjust the mirror angle of the corresponding side mirrors to make it more suitable for the vision when reversing.
3. After the adjustment is completed, disengage the R gear position to complete the storage.

Rearview mirrors

Adjust side mirror using steering wheel

1. Touch the steering wheel to adjust the side mirrors.
2. Touch the **【Left】** or **【Right】** button to select the side mirrors to be adjusted.
3. Press the corresponding button on the left side of the steering wheel to adjust the mirror angle of the side mirrors.

Side mirrors memory

You can set the memory function of the side mirrors through the **【Car】** → **【In-vehicle】** → **【Driver's seat】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

【Driver's seat memory/mirrors memory/steering wheel memory】 : tap any memory button for a long time to store the current positions of the driver seat, side mirrors and steering wheel, and the system prompts that the position is saved successfully at the same time.

Tap any memory button to recall the driver seat, side mirrors, and steering wheel positions stored by the button.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle speed exceeds 7 km/h, the driver's seat memory, mirrors memory and steering wheel memory functions on the multimedia display screen will not be operated and used to avoid distracting the driver and hindering safe driving.

Steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Adjustment method

Electric adjustment type



D6DFE829816B

Toggle the adjustment knob in the direction of the arrow, adjust the steering wheel to align it with your chest, and make sure you can see all the instrument panels and indicator lights on the instrument cluster.

Manual adjustment type



415B7504300A

1. Release the adjustment lever beneath the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to align it to your chest and make sure you can see all the instrument panels and indicator lights on the instrument cluster.
3. After adjusting, retract the adjustment lever in place to lock the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the steering wheel during vehicle running. Otherwise, serious injury or death may result from an accident caused by control errors.
- › You must ensure that the steering wheel is locked firmly in place after adjusting it. Otherwise, serious injury or death may result from an accident caused by sudden movement of the steering wheel.

Steering wheel

Horn

Press the horn mark on the steering wheel or its surrounding area and the horn honks.

⚠ CAUTION

- › There is a front airbag inside the steering wheel. Do not hit the position around the horn hard to avoid the condition that the airbag cannot work normally during accident or the airbag is accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.
- › Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.

Steering wheel welcome/memory

You can set the steering wheel welcome/memory function through the **【Car】** → **【In-vehicle】** → **【Driver's seat】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

An electric adjustment type steering wheel is equipped with steering wheel welcome/memory function.

- › **【Driver's seat memory/mirrors memory/steering wheel memory】** : touch any memory button for a long time to store the current positions of the driver's seat, rearview mirrors and steering wheel, and the system prompts that the position is saved successfully. Touch any memory button to recall the driver's seat, rearview mirrors, and steering wheel positions stored by the button.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle speed exceeds 7 km/h, to avoid distracting the driver and hindering the safe driving, the driver's seat, rearview mirrors, and steering wheel memory functions on the multimedia display screen will be deactivated.

- › **【Driver's seat/steering wheel welcome】** : after the function is turned on, when the power supply mode is OFF and the driver side door is opened, the driver's seat/steering wheel will automatically move to a position that is convenient for getting on and off the vehicle. When the power supply mode is ON and the driver side door is closed, the driver's seat/steering wheel will automatically return to the position used last time.

Steering wheel

i NOTICE

- › During the automatic movement and return of the driver's seat/steering wheel, if the driver's seat/steering wheel adjustment switch is operated, the driver's seat/steering wheel will execute the command of the adjustment switch.
- › After the driver's seat/steering wheel automatically moves to a position that is convenient for getting on and off the vehicle, the welcome function will not return to the position used last time if any adjustment is made to the driver's seat/steering wheel.

Steering wheel not straight reminder

Tap the **【Car】** → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen to turn on or off the steering wheel not straight reminder function.

After the steering wheel not straight reminder function is enabled, the system reminds you to straighten the steering wheel when the following conditions are met.

- › The vehicle is started.
- › The left and right turn signal light switches are off.
- › The steering wheel angle exceeds the specified value.
- › The vehicle is stationary and has been engaged in the P gear position.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Roof rack

To install a luggage rack on the roof rack, please read carefully the installation manual that comes with the luggage rack.

i NOTICE

When the luggage rack is installed or used for carrying items, relevant requirements of local traffic regulations should be observed.

Roof rack bearing capacity

The maximum load weight of the roof rack is 50 kg; the maximum load weight of the roof rack is 35 kg when the vehicle is decelerating rapidly.

i NOTICE

The load weight of the roof rack includes accessories such as the beam and other accessories.

⚠ WARNING

- › Items on the roof luggage rack must be secured firmly in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.
- › Loading goods on the roof luggage rack will raise the vehicle center of gravity. Avoid high speed driving, sudden startup, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle due to incorrect operation of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.
- › When rather heavy or large objects are loaded on the roof luggage rack, changes in the vehicle center of mass and wind resistance may affect its driving performance, and there is a risk of an accident. Therefore, you must adjust your driving style and speed according to the specific circumstances.
- › Drive at low speed in lateral wind. The vehicle profile and its high center of gravity make it more sensitive to lateral gust, and reducing the vehicle speed will make it easier to control.
- › Do not overspeed, jolt, make sharp turns, hit objects, etc. when driving off-road or in uneven terrain. This can cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death, as well as serious damage to the suspension and chassis of the vehicle.

Roof rack

1

Operation

- › Do not cross steep slopes, and it is better to drive straight up or down. The vehicle is more likely to roll over than to roll forward or backward.
- › The roof luggage rack can only be used with the sunroof closed. Otherwise, the roof luggage rack or the items loaded on it may cause injury to passengers.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Light setting

You can make the light settings through the **【Car】** → **【Lights】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Personalisation

- › **【Active welcome light】** : with the power supply mode OFF and the main light switch in the AUTO mode, when the ambient brightness reaches the condition to turn on the vehicle lights, unlock the doors from the outside of the vehicle (except for unlocking the doors with the mechanical key) and the vehicle exterior lights will light up.
- › **【Power-saving delay】** : it can be used to set the time delay for the power-saving function to take effect.

The power mode is switched to OFF. If the power supply mode and the door lock state do not change within the set time, the power saving function will be automatically turned on to save power.

- › **【Ceiling light delay】** : with the reading light and roof light door control function activated, the reading light and the roof light will turn off automatically after being on for a certain period of time (set time) when the vehicle is unlocked or when the power supply is switched to the OFF mode and all the doors are closed.
- › **【Follow home delay】** : you can set it to off or set the lighting time of the lights after this function is triggered.
With the power supply mode OFF and the main light switch in AUTO mode, when the ambient brightness reaches the condition to turn on the vehicle lights, open the driver door and the vehicle exterior lights will light up for a period of time so that you can leave the vehicle in dark conditions.
- › **【Find vehicle mode reminder】** : you can set the vehicle prompt status when the vehicle locating function is triggered.

Light control

- › **【Hazard light on with emergency brake】** : when the vehicle is travelling at a speed of more than 50 km/h, the turn signals will flash to warn the vehicle behind to prevent the rear-end collision if you brake the vehicle urgently.

Welcome light

【Approach light】 : with the function activated, when the power supply mode is OFF and the doors are locked, approaching the vehicle with the smart key taken can trigger the approach light. In this case, the exterior lights will show the light effect.

i NOTICE

In order to ensure the starting performance of the vehicle, when the battery power is below a certain level, the approach light show function will not be used. This is a normal phenomenon.

Ambient lights

You can set the interior ambient lights on/off, brightness, colour, intelligent linkage and zone display.

i NOTICE

- › When the ambient lights are on, engage the R gear position, and the ambient lights will go out; disengage the R gear position, and the ambient lights will go on.

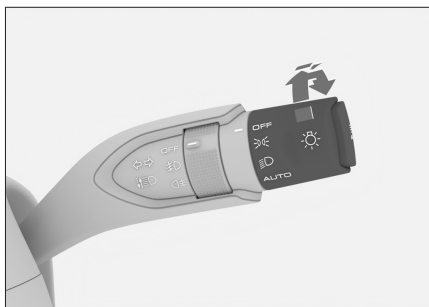
- › If the vehicle speed exceeds 90 km/h, the flowing and rhythm modes will be automatically switched to the static mode. After the vehicle speed drops below 80 km/h, the flowing and rhythm modes will be restored.

Light control combination switch


Main light knob

i NOTICE

Before you lock and leave the vehicle, please turn the main light knob to the OFF or AUTO position to reduce the power consumption of the vehicle and prevent the undervoltage battery from affecting the normal use of the vehicle.




D14250B39D1D

- › Turn the main light knob to the clearance light position  to turn on the position light and the license plate light.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the position light instead of the low beam headlight when driving. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.

The position lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road in front of your vehicle or allow other vehicles and pedestrians to see your vehicle. Therefore, turn on the low beam headlight when it's dark or visibility is poor.

- › Turn the main light knob to the low beam headlight position  to turn on the low beam headlight and keep the position light and the license plate light on.
- › Turn the main light knob to the AUTO position. The clearance lights and low beam headlights will be turned on or off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment.



⚠ CAUTION

- › When visibility is affected in the day due to heavy fog, the lights may not light up automatically. Turn on the lights manually in this case.
- › Automatic light control can only assist the driver. At all times, the driver should be responsible for the lighting of the vehicle.
- › Turn the main light knob to the OFF position to turn off all vehicle lights.

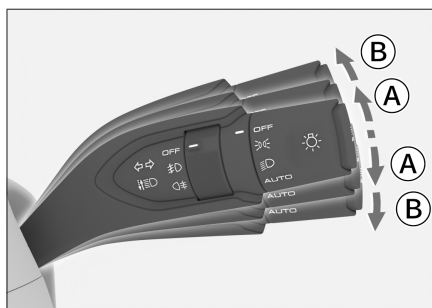
Fog light knob



AB69E517197E

- › When the clearance lights (position light, license plate light) goes on, turn the fog light knob to the front fog light position  to turn on the front fog light.
- › When the low beam headlight or the front fog light goes on, turn the fog light knob to the rear fog light position  repeatedly to turn on or off the rear fog light. When released, the knob will automatically return.

Turn signal and lane change signal



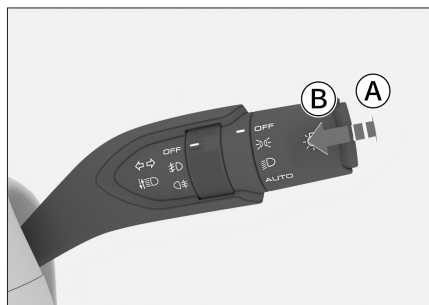
A0494F58A940

- Ⓐ Lane change signal
- Ⓑ Turn signal

Light control

- › Lane change signal: pull up or push down the light control combination switch gently and release it, then the light control combination switch will return automatically and the corresponding turn signal light will flash 3 times.
- › Turn signal (type 1): pull up or push down the light control combination switch and release it, and then the combination switch will not return automatically and the corresponding turn signal light will flash continuously. The combination switch returns automatically after the turning is completed.
- › Turn signal (type 2): pull up or push down the light control combination switch and release it, and then the combination switch will return automatically and the corresponding turn signal light will flash continuously, and go off automatically after the turning is completed. Pull up or push down the light control combination switch gently to manually turn off the turn signal light.

High/low beam manual switch



97C856872B5A



- Ⓐ High beam headlight on
- Ⓑ High beam headlight flashing
- › When the low beam headlight is on, press the light control combination switch in a direction away from the steering wheel to turn on or off the high beam headlight; when you release the light control combination switch, it returns automatically.
- › The high beam headlight goes on when you pull the light control combination switch up in a direction along the steering wheel; when released, the light control combination switch automatically returns and the high beam headlight goes out. You can repeat this operation to make high beam headlight flash.

Auto low-high beam



DBA365170A3E

Auto low-high beam function can automatically switch between high and low beam headlights based on current vehicle speed and the brightness of the surrounding environment.

When the low beam headlight is on and the high beam headlight is off, press the auto low-high beam switch  to turn on or off the auto low-high beam function. After the function is turned on, the auto low-high beam indicator light  on the instrument cluster comes on and displays in green.

WARNING

Auto low-high beam function is only an auxiliary function. When traffic conditions or weather conditions require, the driver should manually switch the high and low beam headlights according to the light and visibility conditions. Manual intervention is required if:

- › weather conditions are not conducive to driving, such as heavy fog or rain or snow.

- › you turn sharply or drive on the slope.
- › you are at a junction or you cannot see the opposite traffic completely, such as when the light of the opposite traffic is obscured by a collision barrier or when you are driving on highway.
- › you are driving in areas with poor lighting conditions and many buildings.
- › there are traffic participants with poor lighting around the road, such as pedestrians or non-motorized vehicles.
- › there are highly reflective objects near the road, such as traffic signs.
- › the rainfall and light sensor on the current windscreen is dirty, frosted or covered by labels.

Daytime running lights

To allow other drivers to see your vehicle more clearly, the daytime running lights automatically turn on when the vehicle is started and the P gear position is exited.

The daytime running lights will go out when the following conditions are triggered:

- › The headlights are on.
- › The P gear position is engaged.

Light control

- › When the left or right turn signals are on, the daytime running lights on the same side will turn off.

⚠ WARNING

- › The daytime running lights are not designed for the needs of night-time driving.
- › It is always the driver's duty to ensure that the vehicle is driven with the correct lights on in compliance with traffic regulations.

Front fog lights auxiliary lighting

This function can realize the automatic lighting of front fog light on the corresponding side of vehicle when turning a corner and the automatic lighting of all front fog lights when reversing, so as to better illuminate the surrounding environment.

The following conditions must be met in order to turn on the front fog lights auxiliary lighting:

- › The speed of the vehicle is less than 35 km/h.
- › The low beam headlights are turned on.
- › The turn indicator is turned on or the angle of steering wheel is greater than 60°.
- › The front fog lights are not turned on.

Emergency flashers



823DB503B510

In the event of vehicle breakdown or traffic accident, you shall turn on the emergency flashers to remind other vehicles.

Press the switch to turn on or turn off the emergency flashers.

Light height adjustment

Electric adjustment



DE951B889024

The headlight beam height is adjusted according to the number of passengers and the load of the vehicle.

- › Turn the knob upwards to raise the height of the headlight beam.
- › Turn the knob downwards to lower the height of the headlight beam.

Automatic adjustment

For vehicles equipped with automatic headlight height adjustment system (ALS), the light height of the low beam headlight will be automatically adjusted according to the change of the vehicle body posture.

i NOTICE

Regarding the light height adjustment, each car is equipped with either the electric adjustment function or the automatic adjustment function, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Vehicle backlight brightness adjustment



865D26DFFCA6

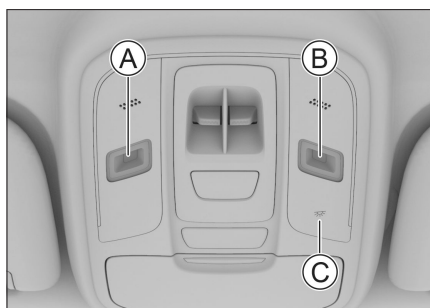
Press the upper/lower part of the button to adjust the backlight brightness of the instrument panel display, multimedia display, and in-vehicle buttons.

Interior lights

Reading lights

i NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, undervoltage battery may be caused.





2CF8415399FB

- ① Left-side reading light switch
- ② Right-side reading light switch
- ③ Reading light main switch/door linked switch

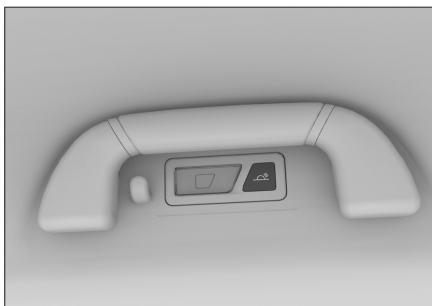
› Touch the lampshade of the reading light to turn on or off the corresponding reading light.

When the reading light is on, you can adjust the brightness of the reading light by continuously touching the lampshade, and release it after reaching the appropriate brightness. After the reading light is off, the brightness will restore to the default value the next time the reading light is turned on.



Light control

- › Touch the reading light main switch  to turn on or off all reading lights and side ceiling lights.
- › Press and hold the door linked switch  to turn on or off the door linked function. The background light of the button turns orange, indicating that the door linked function is enabled. With the door linked function enabled, the reading light will turn on or turn off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door condition.

Side ceiling light



D2746296FA81



Press the left side ceiling light switch  or the right side ceiling light switch  to turn on or turn off the corresponding ceiling light.

With the door linked function enabled, the reading light will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door condition.

Rear ceiling light



A38991EAA621

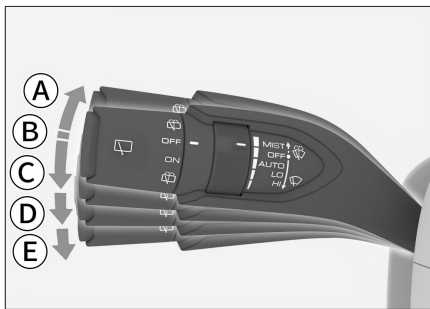
- › Press the door linked switch  to turn on or off the door linked function. With the door linked function enabled, the ceiling light will automatically turn on or off according to the tailgate state.
- › Press the ceiling light switch  to turn the ceiling light on or off.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Front wiper

Front wiper position



A9FC138F7830

Ⓐ Front wiper mist operation (MIST)

Move the wiper control combination switch upwards to the MIST position. Once you release it, it will return to its original position. The front wiper will operate once.

Ⓑ Front wiper off (OFF)

Ⓒ Automatic wipe (AUTO)

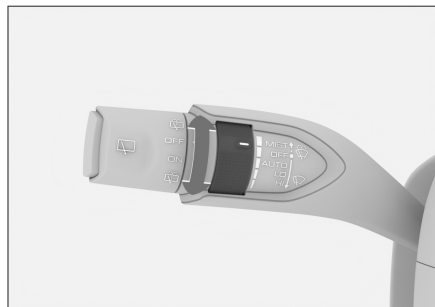
Ⓓ Low speed wipe (LO)

Ⓔ High speed wipe (HI)

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object. Otherwise, the wiper blade or the internal structure of the wiper may be damaged.
- › Prior to using the wiper in the cold season, make sure to check if the wiper blade is frozen on the windscreen. If the wiper blade has been frozen on the windscreen, you shall use it after unfreezing. Otherwise, the wiper blade and wiper motor may be damaged.
- › If the wiper stops working due to accumulated snow or other reasons, turn off the wiper and park the vehicle in a safe spot. Then remove the debris like accumulated snow so that the wiper may continue to work normally.

Adjustment of auto wipe frequency



F17BE43EF935

Wiper control

Turning the adjustment knob can change the sensitivity of the rainfall and light sensor to the rain, thereby changing the wipe frequency of the front wiper when it is at the auto wipe position.

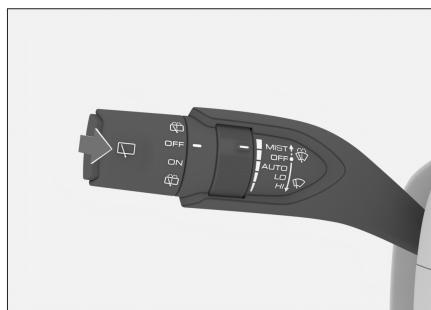
⚠ WARNING

- › The rainfall and light sensor may not fully recognize each fall of rain and activate the front wiper. If rain on the windscreen affects the vision, you shall manually adjust the front wiper position or wipe frequency duly as required.
- › When the automatic front wiper is in the AUTO position, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly if the windscreen near the rearview mirror is touched from outside or the windscreen is vibrated. Be careful not to get your fingers and other parts of your body caught in the front wiper.
- › Do not place the automatic front wiper in the AUTO position when you wash the car or no front wiper is required to be used. Otherwise, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen near the rearview mirror is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object, otherwise it may affect the normal work of the automatic wiper.
- › Sometimes, even if snowflakes come in contact with the rainfall and light sensor, the sensor may not operate normally and the front wipers may not function, as snowflakes come in different shapes. The snow melted may cause the front wiper to automatically operate.

Washing function



EBB6022B57B3

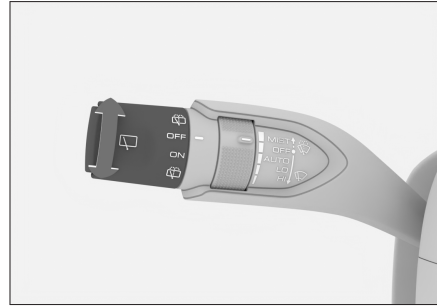
Pull up and hold the wiper control combination switch towards the steering wheel, and the front wipers will use windscreen washer fluid to wipe the front windscreen. When it is released, the combination switch will return automatically to its original position.

Wiper control

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid prolonged use of the washer. Otherwise, the washing motor may be damaged.
To protect the washing motor, the washer may automatically shut down after a period of continuous operation.
- › When the washer fluid is insufficient, replenish it. In the cold season, add appropriate washer fluid to ensure that it will not freeze. Otherwise, not only the washing function will not be available, but also the related parts will be frozen.
- › Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (eg.: cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wiper.
- › Do not let the wiper blade come into contact with products such as oil-based cleaning agents, otherwise a chemical reaction will occur, resulting in serious deformation of the wiper blade.

Rear wiper



- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the ON position and the rear wiper will be turned on.
- › Turn and hold the rear wiper control knob to the rear windscreen cleaning position (intermittent wiper symbol). The rear wiper will wipe the rear windscreen by using the windscreen washer fluid. Release the control knob and it will return automatically to its original position.
- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the OFF position and the rear wiper will be turned off.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (eg.: cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wiper.

1

Operation

Wiper control

1

Operation

- › Do not let the wiper blade come into contact with products such as oil-based cleaning agents, otherwise a chemical reaction will occur, resulting in serious deformation of the wiper blade.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Air conditioning control panel

Front A/C



DA3ECE5E9E81

i NOTICE

If the multimedia display screen shows the rear A/C interface, press the corresponding button on the front A/C panel to control the corresponding function of the rear A/C.

- › Press the **ON/OFF** button to turn on or off the front A/C. The corresponding indicator light goes on, indicating that the A/C has been turned on.

i NOTICE

When the rear A/C is on, if you turn off the front A/C, the rear A/C will be disabled simultaneously.


- › Press the AUTO button to activate the automatic mode. The corresponding indicator light is on, indicating that the automatic mode has been turned on. In this mode, the air outlet mode, fan speed and internal and external circulation will be automatically adjusted to reach the set temperature.

i NOTICE

If the automatic mode cannot meet your needs, you can perform the manual adjustment. In this case, the automatic mode will be exited and the indicator light will go out.

- › Press the A/C button to turn the compressor on or off. The corresponding indicator light is on, indicating that the compressor has been turned on. In the cooling mode, the interior temperature and humidity can be reduced.
- › Press the fan speed decrease button **⌵** to decrease the fan speed.
- › Press the fan speed increase button **⌶** to increase the fan speed.



A/C system

- › Press the MODE button to switch the air outlet mode.
- › Press the internal and external circulation button  to switch between the internal and external circulation modes. The button indicator light goes on, indicating that the internal circulation mode has been turned on. The button indicator light goes out, indicating that the external circulation mode has been turned on, and the exterior air can be introduced into the vehicle.

NOTICE

- › In general, the external circulation mode should be used. Using the internal circulation mode tends to cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.
- › The internal circulation mode should be used under such circumstances as the tunnel, traffic jam, dirty air outside the vehicle or quick cooling and heating desired.

- › When the exterior environment has a heavy odour or the severe weather such as sand and dust, strong wind, heavy rain and snow is suddenly encountered, press and hold the internal and external circulation mode switching button on the A/C control panel to automatically close the sunroof and all windows while switching to the internal circulation mode to improve operation convenience and driving safety.

- › Press the front defroster button  to turn on or off the front defroster function. The corresponding indicator light comes on, indicating that the front defroster function has been turned on. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually relieved.
- › Press the rear defroster button  to turn on or off the rear defroster function. The corresponding indicator light is on, indicating that the rear defroster function has been enabled, and the frosting and fogging of the rear windscreen can be gradually relieved.
The rear defroster function will be turned off automatically after operating for a period of time, and the corresponding indicator light will go out.

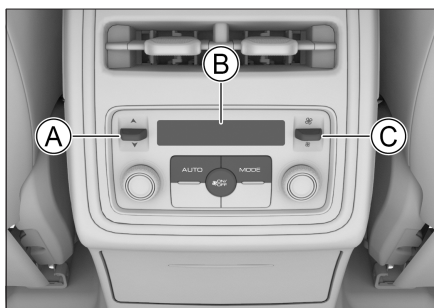
⚠ WARNING

Once the rear defroster function has been enabled, the rear windscreen will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for a long time, so as to prevent the under-voltage battery.

Rear A/C



Ⓐ Temperature adjustment switch

Ⓑ Display screen

Ⓒ Fan speed adjustment switch

- › Press the  button to turn on or off the rear A/C.

i NOTICE

When the front and rear A/C are off, if you turn on the rear A/C, the front A/C will be turned on simultaneously.

- › Press the AUTO button to activate the automatic mode. In this mode, the air outlet mode and the fan speed can be automatically adjusted to reach the set temperature.

i NOTICE

If the automatic mode cannot meet your demand, you can perform manual adjustment; in this case, the system will exit the automatic mode.

- › Press the MODE button to switch the air outlet mode.
- › Toggle the temperature adjustment switch upwards to increase the temperature. Toggle the temperature adjustment switch downwards to decrease the temperature.
- › Toggle the fan speed adjustment switch upwards to increase the fan speed; toggle the fan speed adjustment switch downwards to reduce the fan speed.

A/C setting interface

You can set the working state of the A/C through the A/C setting interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE









- › The air conditioning setting interface may be slightly different depending on the vehicle configurations. please refer to the actual vehicle.

A/C system

- › The air conditioning system consumes power from the battery when it is in operation and its use will reduce the range.
- › Under extreme operating conditions (e.g. high or low ambient temperatures, long-time slope climbing, etc.), the air conditioning may be limited in its power or even stop working in order to ensure the vehicle power performance.

Front A/C setting

- › Tap the **【ON】** / **【OFF】** button to turn on or off the front A/C.
 - › Tap the **【AUTO】** button to turn on the automatic mode. The corresponding indicator light comes on, indicating that the automatic mode has been turned on. In this mode, the air outlet mode, fan speed and internal and external circulation will be automatically adjusted to reach the set temperature.
- i NOTICE**

If the automatic adjustment function of the front A/C cannot meet your needs, you can perform the manual adjustment. In this case, the automatic mode will be exited and the indicator light will go out.
- › Tap the **【A/C】** button to turn the compressor on or off. The corresponding indicator light is on, indicating that the compressor has been turned on. In the cooling mode, the interior temperature and humidity can be reduced.
 - › Tap the **【A/C MAX】** button to activate or deactivate the maximum cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light comes on, indicating that the maximum cooling mode has been turned on. In this case, the A/C will activate the cooling mode and operate in the lowest temperature, the maximum fan speed, the internal circulation mode and the face-blowing mode.
 - › Tap the face-blowing mode button , the feet and face-blowing mode button , the feet-blowing mode button , or the feet-blowing and defroster mode button  to select the corresponding airflow distribution mode.
 - › Tap the warming button  or cooling button  to adjust the temperature. Slide at the space between the warming button  and the cooling button  to adjust the temperature.
 - › Tap the **【ZONE】** button to switch to the synchronization mode or the zone mode. The button icon is on to activate the zone mode, and the button icon is off to activate the synchronization mode.

i NOTICE


In synchronization mode, when the front defroster of the front A/C is turned on, the air outlet mode of the rear A/C does not change.


In synchronization mode, when the driver side A/C is adjusted, the front passenger side and rear A/C will be adjusted synchronously.

In synchronization mode, tap the **【ZONE】** button and the passenger side and rear A/C will exit the synchronization with the driver side.

When you adjust the front passenger side A/C temperature, the front passenger side A/C will exit the synchronization with the driver side.

When adjusting the rear A/C temperature, fan speed and mode, the rear A/C will exit the synchronization with the driver side.

- › Tap the front defroster button  to turn on or off the front defroster function. The corresponding indicator light comes on, indicating that the front defroster function has been turned on. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually relieved.







- › Tap the rear window defroster button  to turn on or off the rear defroster function. The corresponding indicator light is on, indicating that the rear defroster function has been enabled, and the frosting and fogging of the rear windscreen can be gradually relieved. The rear defroster function will be turned off automatically after operating for a period of time, and the corresponding indicator light will go out.

! WARNING


Once the rear defroster function has been enabled, the rear windscreen will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.


i NOTICE

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for a long time, so as to prevent the under-voltage battery.

- › Tap the fan speed decrease button  and the fan speed increase button  to adjust the fan speed. Tap or slide the area between the fan speed decrease button  and the fan speed increase button  to adjust the fan speed.
- › Tap the internal circulation button  or the external circulation button  to switch between the external and internal circulation modes.

A/C system


The internal circulation indicator light  comes on, indicating that the internal circulation mode has been turned on.

The external circulation indicator light  comes on, indicating that the external circulation mode has been turned on, and the exterior air can be introduced into the vehicle.

NOTICE

- › In general, the external circulation mode should be used. Using the internal circulation mode tends to cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.
- › The internal circulation mode should be used under such circumstances as the tunnel, traffic jam, dirty air outside the vehicle or quick cooling and heating desired.

More A/C settings interface

Tap the  button on the front A/C interface to pop up more settings interface. The following settings can be made:

- › **【A/C comfort】** : you can set the comfort effect of the A/C system in AUTO mode.
Soft: the cooling or heating effect of the A/C system is softer with smaller fan speed compared with that of the standard mode.

Standard: the A/C system automatically controls the outlet temperature and fan speed according to the temperature set by the user.

Powerful: the cooling or heating effect of the A/C system is stronger with larger fan speed compared with that of the standard mode.

- › **【AQS】** : you can turn on or off the automatic air quality control (AQS) function. After the function is turned on, the A/C system will automatically detect the air quality and automatically switch between the internal and external circulation modes.
- › **【Automatic defogging】** : you can turn on or off this function. After this function is turned on, when the A/C is in AUTO mode, the system will automatically adjust the A/C to gradually relieve fogging of the front windscreen.
- › **【Turn on A/C quickly】** : you can turn on or off this function. After this function is turned on, A/C is started when A/C panel is active.

Rear A/C setting

On the front A/C interface, tap the upper **【Rear】** button to switch to the rear A/C interface.

- › Tap the **【ON】** / **【OFF】** button to turn on or off the rear A/C.










i NOTICE



When the front and rear A/C are off, if you turn on the rear A/C, the front A/C will be turned on simultaneously.

- › Tap the **【AUTO】** button to turn on the automatic mode. The corresponding indicator light comes on, indicating that the automatic mode has been turned on. In this mode, the air outlet mode and the fan speed can be automatically adjusted to reach the set temperature.

i NOTICE

If the automatic mode cannot meet your needs, you can perform the manual adjustment. In this case, the automatic mode will be exited and the indicator light will go out.

- › Tap the face-blowing mode button , the feet and face-blowing mode button , or the feet-blowing mode button  to select the corresponding airflow distribution mode.
- › Tap the warming button  or cooling button  to adjust the temperature. Slide at the space between the warming button  and the cooling button  to adjust the temperature.
- › Tap the fan speed decrease button  and the fan speed increase button  to adjust the fan speed.

Tap or slide the area between the fan speed decrease button  and the fan speed increase button  to adjust the fan speed.

A/C control

Cooling/heating

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the **【AUTO】** mode and the corresponding indicator light will turn on. At this moment, the compressor will be automatically turned on or off depending on the temperature and the environment.
2. Set the temperature to your desired value. The A/C system will automatically adjust the airflow distribution mode and the airflow to achieve the set temperature.
3. Selecting the internal circulation mode may speed up cooling or heating and help to improve the economy and comfort of the vehicle.

i NOTICE

- › When the vehicle is exposed to the burning sun for a long time, the temperature inside the vehicle will be very high. In this case, if you need to drive the vehicle, you are recommended to lower all the windows for ventilation and then enable the A/C cooling mode. After the heat inside the vehicle is dissipated, raise all the windows.

A/C system

- › After the A/C temperature is set, the A/C system will automatically control the working state of the cooling system and the heating system according to the ambient temperature inside and outside the vehicle. After the A/C system is turned on in the cold season, the heating system needs to warm up for a period of time before it can work normally. Before the heating system finishes the warming up, the A/C system may not distribute warm air, and its airflow is small. This is normal.

Front defroster/front defogger

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the front defroster mode, and the corresponding indicator light will turn on.
2. You can also adjust the airflow or the temperature, turn on or off the compressor, or switch between the internal and external circulation modes on demand.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to switch to the external circulation mode if inside air is heavily polluted or the interior is fogged up.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Check the radiator and the A/C condenser on a regular basis. Use a low-pressure water gun or a soft brush to remove the leaves, insects and dust from their front surfaces. Otherwise, these objects will block the air flow, thereby reducing the cooling effect.
- › Running the A/C regularly keeps the compressor and seals well lubricated and prevents leakage. Therefore, even in the cold season when A/C is not required, it is necessary to run the A/C at least once a week for more than 10 minutes each time.
- › If the A/C system does not cool as well as before, head to the authorised service centre for maintenance.
- › Direct discharge of refrigerant into the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and the refrigerant should be recovered by trained and certified technicians using appropriate containers.

i NOTICE

About the A/C odour

› Source of the odour

Internal and external air exchange should be carried out for A/C as its long-term use may gather dirt which will go mouldy after a long time, resulting in odour.

The A/C filter will accumulate water vapour, dust, etc. after use for a long time, resulting in odour.

Recommended measures

When the outside air is fresh, the external circulation mode is recommended for use to keep the air inside the vehicle circulating.

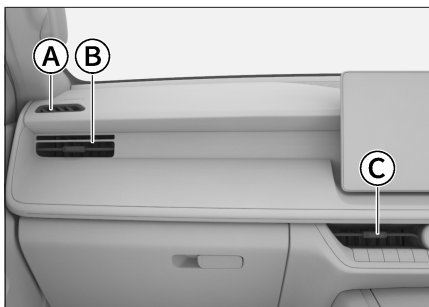
When the vehicle is in cooling mode, you are recommended to turn off the

【A/C】 switch first and let the A/C continue running for about 3~5 minutes before turning off the A/C system. This will dry off the A/C evaporator and the A/C system to prevent mould growth and reduce odours.

When you feel the odour is very strong, you are recommended to head to the authorised service centre for check. Clean or replace the A/C filter element, if necessary.

A/C vents

Front vent adjustment



29E0ED9FBB83

(A) Defroster side vent

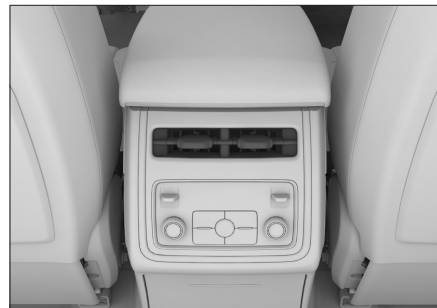
(B) Side vent

(C) Front centre vent

By turning the slats at the centre of the vent, adjust the direction of air flow.

Slide the slats as indicated by the left-to-close marking ☒ ⇐ or right-to-close marking ⇨ ☒ to the limit position to close the air vent.

Rear vent adjustment



D03F3B2632B2

Move the toggle switch in the middle of the vent to adjust the direction of the air flow.

Move the toggle switch as indicated by the left-to-close marking ☒ ⇐ or right-to-close marking ⇨ ☒ to close the vent.

Roof vent adjustment



2DF982385188

A/C system

By turning the slats at the centre of the vent, adjust the direction of air flow.

By turning the slats all the way to the rear of the vehicle, close the vent.

1

Operation

Storage box vent adjustment



8EB84E3C57B1

Pull up the ventilation valve in the storage box to open it; press the valve down to close it.

After the valve is opened, when the A/C system is in face-blowing mode or feet and face-blowing mode, the air from the A/C system can be introduced into the storage box.

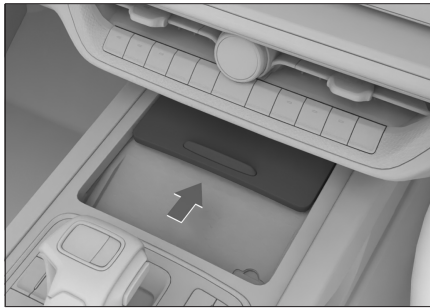
Mobile phone wireless charging

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Mobile phone wireless charging

You can activate or deactivate the wireless charging function of the mobile phone through the **【Car】** → **【In-vehicle】** → **【Wireless charging】** interface on the front multimedia display screen.



D06240E1BE40

Push the cover plate forwards to open the wireless charging compartment, and push forwards again to close it.

After activating the wireless charging function for the mobile phone, make sure that front doors are closed, and switch the power supply mode to ON or start the vehicle, to perform wireless charging for the mobile phone.

i NOTICE

- › To achieve a better charging effect, ensure that the charging coil of the mobile phone is facing downwards.
- › This function is not applicable to all mobile phones, but only to mobile phones that have passed the "Qi" official standard certification and can be normally placed in the charging area.
- › Only one mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- › On bumpy roads, intermittent stopping and resuming of wireless charging may occur. If the mobile phone deviates from the charging area and the charging stops, move the mobile phone back to the chargeable area.
- › It is normal that wireless charging devices and mobile phones will get hot during charging.

When the temperature is too high, the system will stop charging, and will continue charging after the temperature drops.

Mobile phone wireless charging

- › If the mobile phone is faulty, this may also cause it to fail to be charged. Other mobile phones that meet the requirements can be used for wireless charging detection to confirm whether the mobile phone is faulty.
- › If the mobile phone is equipped with a protective cover or an accessory that does not support wireless charging, take out it first; otherwise, the mobile cannot be charged normally.
- › The actual charging power may vary or decrease due to factors such as the mobile phone brand, model, and current battery level. For mobile phones with a small inductive coil, use the brand-specific wireless charger for high-power charging, as using the on-board wireless charging module may result in reduced power.
- › Due to the position of the charging coil, foldable phones need to align their coils with the vehicle's wireless charging coil in order to charge; otherwise, it may result in slow charging or no charging at all.
- › To prevent draining the battery voltage, do not use the wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not started.

⚠ WARNING

- › For the sake of safety, drivers should not perform charging related operations during driving.
- › Do not place coins, keys, chip cards and other metal objects in the charging area. Otherwise, metal objects may be heated, which may lead to abnormal charging or safety accidents.

If metal foreign objects are found in the charging area during charging, do not remove them by hand to avoid scalding your fingers. You should deactivate the wireless charging function immediately, and wait a few minutes before removing foreign objects.

- › If you need to use the charging area as a storage case, deactivate the wireless charging function.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not spray any liquid at the charging area, so as to avoid the liquid seeping into the wireless charging system through the clearance of rubber mat, which may lead to system failure.
- › Do not modify the wireless charging system to avoid damage to the vehicle or accidents.

Mobile phone wireless charging

i NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

1

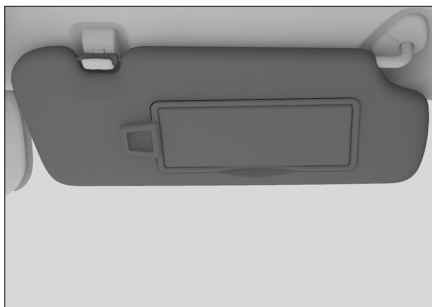
Operation

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Sun visor



38F95C98BEC0

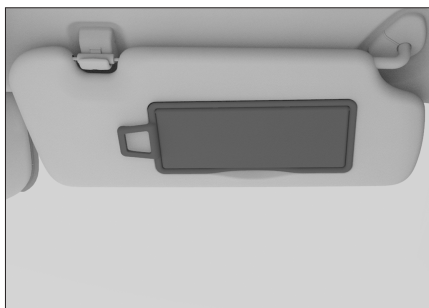
To block sunlight from straight ahead, flip down the sun visor.



EE7A67445D9C

To block sunlight coming in from the side, flip down the sun visor, unhook it and push it to the side.

Vanity mirror



51777FC8915A

A vanity mirror is set inside the sun visor. Open the cover and use it.

Please close the lid when not using the vanity mirror.

Storage box



561DF7DF4656

Pull the handle on the storage box, and the storage box will open automatically. Flip the storage box up until it is locked in place to close it.

Interior equipment

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the storage box is closed when driving. Otherwise, the items may be thrown out from the storage box and lead to an injury in the case of an accident or emergency braking.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pour water or other liquids into the storage case. Because the fuse box is located at the rear of the storage case, moisture infiltration will affect the use of the fuse.

Storage cases

Located on the lower right part of the instrument panel



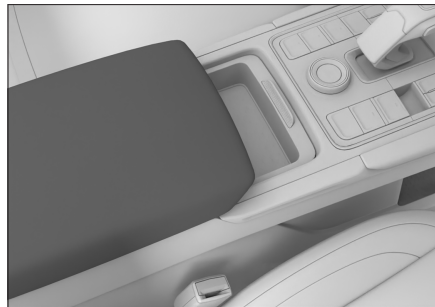
73D948A6DE87

To use the storage case, press the switch, and the storage case will automatically open.

This storage case is suitable for placing items such as driver's license and vehicle licence. It may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

When the storage case is not in use, flip up the storage case until it is locked in place to close the storage case.

Located under the front armrest

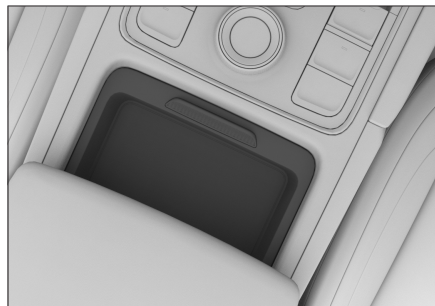


57925A2EFC24

To use the storage case, just flip up the front armrest.

This storage case is suitable for placing items such as beverages, mineral water, and papers. It may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

Located in front of the front armrest



F062A96214BE

1

Operation

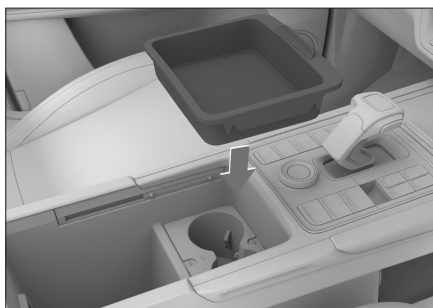
Interior equipment

The storage case can be slid back and forth for a certain distance. Slide it backwards to see the cup holder at the bottom.

This storage case is suitable for placing small items such as mobile phones, keys, wallets, etc. It may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

When removal is required, first flip up the front armrest, and then directly pull out the storage case upwards to increase the storage space.

When installation is required, slide the lower guide rails on both sides to the front end, press the storage case down firmly at the mounting point, and ensure that the installation is in place.



F3F84DA911E6

Located behind the auxiliary instrument panel



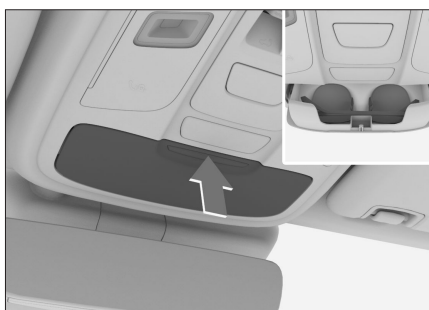
14B2ED623F56

To use the storage case, press it as shown in the figure, and the storage case will automatically pop open.

When the storage case is not in use, press the storage case to close it in place.

This storage case is suitable for placing items such as mobile phones and paper towels, and it may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

Spectacle case



85206D0D9331

Press the spectacle case to open it.

Interior equipment

When placing the spectacles, fold the two temples normally, with the lenses facing forward and the temples facing upward. Otherwise, the spectacles may fall when the spectacle case is opened.

⚠ WARNING

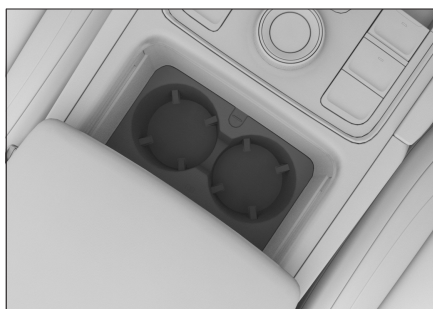
Make sure the spectacle case has been closed when driving.

i NOTICE

Certain oversized sunglasses models may not fit to this case.

Front cup holder

Slide the storage box backwards to see the front cup holder.

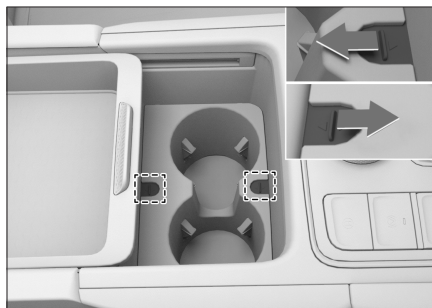


F17F43EC86DB

⚠ CAUTION

- › Don't place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holders, or they may tip over.
- › Make sure that the lid of the beverage can is put on to avoid spilling liquid.

Front cup holder removal and installation

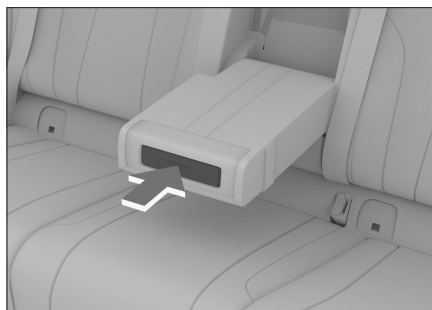


6F4E8771EE67

Flip up the front armrest first, then turn the cup holder fixing switch in the direction of the arrow to make the switch detach from the storage case wall and take out the cup holder upwards.

Place the cup holder in place along the storage case wall, and turn the cup holder fixing switch in the opposite direction to secure the cup holder in place.

Second row cup holder



2FF485575AD6

When the bottle holder is in use, put down the second row seat armrest first, press the cup holder cover to make it pop out for use.

1

Operation

Interior equipment

Before resetting the second row seat armrest, make sure there are no objects in the cup holder and press the cup holder cover to close it.

⚠ WARNING

- › When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.
 - › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder.
- Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, which may cause an accident or personal injury.

Make sure the beverage cans are intact and the lids are closed, otherwise the liquid in the beverage cans may spill, with a risk of damaging the electronic equipment in the car, soiling the interior, or causing personal injury.

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in the event of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Third row cup holder



81023E62E1CB

The cup holder is located near the side of the third row seats.

⚠ WARNING

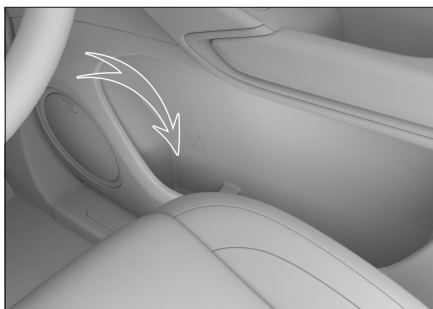
- › When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.
 - › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder.
- Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, which may cause an accident or personal injury.

Make sure the beverage cans are intact and the lids are closed, otherwise the liquid in the beverage cans may spill, with a risk of damaging the electronic equipment in the car, soiling the interior, or causing personal injury.

Interior equipment

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in the event of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Bottle holders



There is a bottle holder at the inside of each door, which is used only for placing the sealed bottle container.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than bottles inside the bottle holder. Otherwise, such items may be dislodged from the bottle holder and lead to personal injuries in the case of accident or emergency braking.

⚠ CAUTION

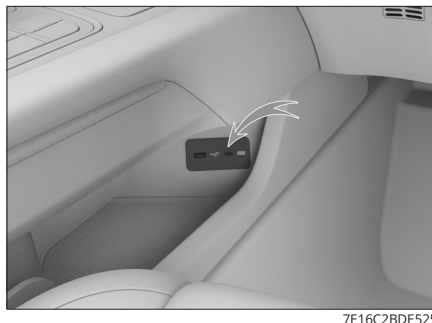
Make sure that the lid of the bottle is closed to avoid spilling liquid.

Power supply socket

i NOTICE

When using the power supply socket to supply power to the electrical equipment, please start the vehicle. Avoid long-term battery discharge causing power loss and affecting the normal start of the vehicle.

Front USB power supply



The front USB Type-C power supply is located in the hollow place on the right side of the auxiliary console.

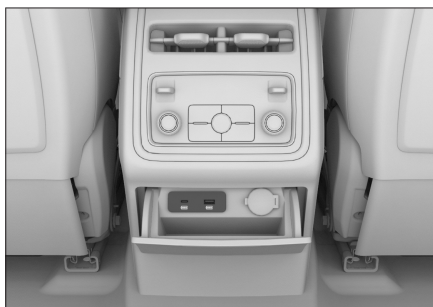
When the power supply is in ON mode, this power supply can be used to charge the electrical devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

Interior equipment

1

Operation

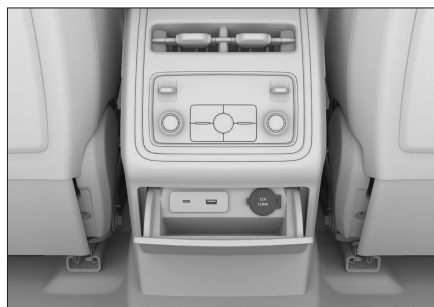
Rear USB power supply



The rear USB power supply is located in the storage case at the rear of the auxiliary console. When using, first press the storage case to open it.

When the power supply is in ON mode, this power supply can be used to charge the electrical devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

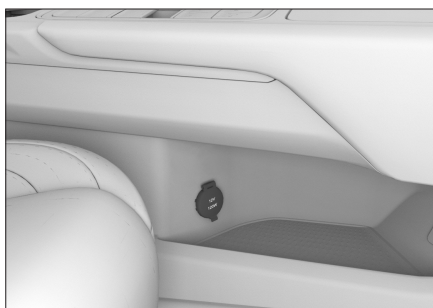
Rear 12 V power supply



The rear 12 V power supply is located in the storage case at the rear of the auxiliary console. When using, first press the storage case to open it.

When the power supply is in ON mode, this power supply can provide a 12 V DC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

Front 12 V power supply



The front 12 V power supply is located in the hollow place on the right side of the auxiliary console.

When the power supply is in ON mode, this power supply can provide a 12 V DC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

220 V power supply



The 220 V power supply is located on the right trim plate of the luggage area. Open the cover to use it when the vehicle is started.

This power supply can provide a 220 V AC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 400 W.

i NOTICE

When a high-power capacitive load is connected (for example, a high-power notebook computer), the power socket may trigger a short-circuit protection, causing the power supply failure. At this time, you can try to plug and unplug the load multiple times to restore the power supply function, but it is not recommended to use this type of load frequently.

⚠ WARNING

- › It is forbidden for children to operate the 220 V power supply socket.
- › It is forbidden to insert conductive objects, such as sewing needles, iron wires and the like, into the contacts of a 220 V power supply socket.

Driving recorder power supply



B12BF5531A0D

The driving recorder power supply is located near the interior rearview mirror.

This power supply can be used when the power supply is in ON mode. This power supply is designed to provide a 5 V DC power supply for driving recorders whose rated power is less than or equal to 10 W.

i NOTICE

For driving safety, be careful not to block the line of sight to prevent danger when installing a driving recorder.

⚠ WARNING

Flammable gases and heaters must be kept away from the power supply socket.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid liquids such as beverages or foreign objects to enter the power supply socket. Otherwise, the faults like short circuits may be caused. If the power supply socket has a cover, close the cover when it is not in use.
- › If you use an accessory that exceeds the rated power, the vehicle fuse may be burnt out.
- › Do not connect precision devices, highly sensitive equipments or other important equipments to this power supply socket.
- › Do not use this power supply socket in humid and high-temperature conditions.

Interior equipment

- › Never use it in parallel or in series with any other power supply.
- › If you find any abnormal conditions (unusually high temperature, smoke, odour, etc.) during use, please stop using the power supply immediately and contact the authorised service centre for inspection and repair.
- › Modifying or repairing this power supply socket without authorization is forbidden.

2 Driving

Driving procedures.....	98	Tyre pressure monitoring system	163
Advice on driving in harsh environments	104	Fatigue driving reminder system	165
Advice on driving during run-in period	112	Intelligent driving assist system	167
Hybrid vehicle	113	Hill descent control system (HDC)	192
Power supply switch	119	Driving assist system.....	193
Starting and shutting down the vehicle	121	Emission control system.....	197
Parking brake	123	Head up display system (HUD)	199
Gear shifting.....	126	Instrument panel.....	201
Comfortable braking.....	133	Instrument panel indicator lights	205
Steering wheel assist modes	134	Power management system.....	215
All-terrain control system....	135		
Off-road cruise control system	141		
OFFROAD mode.....	145		
Wading detection	147		
Differential lock switch	148		
Parking assist system.....	152		

Driving procedures

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Before driving

Removing debris

Remove the snow and fallen leaves, etc. before driving.

Checking vehicle conditions

Check tyres, fluid, lights and body appearance before driving to ensure your safe and pleasant driving.

If your vehicle requires maintenance or repair, get in touch with the authorised service centre in a timely manner.

Confirming vehicle doors and bonnet status

Before driving, confirm all vehicle doors are closed. If a vehicle door has not been closed properly, it may open unexpectedly during the driving and cause an accident.

Before driving, if you have opened the bonnet, confirm that the bonnet has been locked down. If the bonnet has not been locked properly, it may open during driving and cause an accident.

Placing objects in-vehicle

On the instrument panel

Do not place any item on the instrument panel. The items placed on the instrument panel may not only obstruct the driver's view, but also affect the starting off and safe driving, which may lead to accidents.

The driver's feet well

Do not place any items at the feet well of the driver. Items placed at the driver's feet well may be trapped under pedals, causing the driver to lose control of the vehicle, which leads to an accident.

If you want to use a floor mat, choose a suitable floor mat. If the selected floor mat shape and its layout position are inappropriate or if the floor mat is double stacked, pedal performance may be affected, which could lead to problems in starting the vehicle, braking, or difficulties in changing gear, and could result in an accident.

Under the seat

Do not place any items under the seat. Items placed under the seat will make it difficult to adjust the seat position or fasten the seat, which can easily lead to an accident.

Driving procedures

Seat backrest

Do not place cushions and other items between the seat backrest and the back of the human body. Otherwise, the correct driving posture will be affected; besides, in the event of a vehicle collision, seat belts and head restraints will not function properly and provide full protection, and even serious life-threatening injuries will occur.

On the window glass

Do not attach decorative items like vacuum suction cups to window glass.

Vacuum suction cups can act as a lens, leading to a higher risk of fires.

Precautions for driving

No speeding

The vehicle should not exceed the speed indicated by speed limit signs or mark lines.

No overloading

Overloaded driving is dangerous.

Do not carry passengers or goods more than what is on the indicated maximum limit. Do not carry passengers in the luggage area or the luggage compartment.

No fatigue driving

Fatigue driving is extremely dangerous as the judgement, view and attention of the driver in fatigue state will drop substantially. It can easily cause a serious accident.

Not shutting down the vehicle

The brake assist device and power steering system will not function if the vehicle is shut down while driving, which may lead to deterioration of braking efficiency, and cause severe accident.

No turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time

Turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time may reduce the power assist effect of the steering system and you may feel heavier when turning the steering wheel.

Braking

While driving, do not continuously step on the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Otherwise it may lead to premature wear-and-tear in the brake pad or overheating in the brake, thereby affecting the braking efficiency and possibly leading to accidents.

Brake emitting a warning sound

The disc brake will emit a warning sound when the brake pad wears and needs to be replaced.

If you hear a rattling sound while braking, do not continue driving. Otherwise, this will severely wear the brake disk, damage the brake parts and affect the braking efficiency or even lead to an accident.

Driving procedures

Flat tyre

Do not continue to drive the vehicle with a flat tyre. Driving with a flat tyre is extremely dangerous and can easily cause a serious accident. In addition, tyres, wheels, suspension and vehicle body will be damaged. At this moment, replace the tyre immediately.

When any of the following situations occurs, confirm whether the vehicle tyre is punctured or flat:

- › The steering wheel shakes.
- › The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- › The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently step on the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or turning the steering wheel sharply may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

A strong impact on chassis, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle

When the chassis, tyres, wheels, and drive system of the vehicle suffer a strong impact, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe spot and inspect the vehicle. Check for leakage in brake fluid and fuel, and for deformation or damage to suspension, tyres, wheels, traction battery pack, drive system, etc. If you find signs of leakage or damage, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Failure to adhere to the advice may lead to accidents.

Driving downhill

Vehicle shutdown or neutral coasting prohibited

The braking force assist device and power steering system will not work if the vehicle is shut down while driving downhill. In this scenario, braking efficiency will be compromised and you may feel the steering wheel heavy, which is easy to cause accidents.

Driving on uneven road surfaces

When stopping the vehicle on a curb or on a road surface with a height difference, make sure that the tyres are not crushed and deformed by the curb or other obstacles.

When the vehicle must pass a curb, a speed bump or a similar obstacle, you should try to slow down along the vertical angle of the obstacle. Failure to do so may result in damage to the tyre (especially to the side wall of the tyre).

Driving in the following road conditions may cause damage to the bumper. Slow down and drive carefully.

- › Road sections with steps such as parking lot entrances and exits;
- › Steep slopes such as sharp turns in multi-story parking lots;
- › Potholes and rutted roads;
- › Sections of road where there are potholes;
- › Driving from a flat section to a ramp, or from a ramp to a flat section;

- › Parking on a road with speed bumps or along a curb.

Driving on slippery road surfaces, such as wet, snowy or icy road surfaces

Emergency braking, sudden acceleration, or turning steering wheel sharply on slippery road surfaces may cause vehicle tyres to skid and the vehicle to go out of control, thereby causing an accident.

In cold weather, you should slow down when driving in areas that are prone to freezing, such as bridges and shady areas.

Driving on flooded roads

Be careful while driving on flooded roads.

Driving on flooded roads may lead to short circuit of electrical components or damage to electrical elements, resulting in a major accident.

While you drive on flooded roads, the brake pads will become wet and the braking efficiency will be reduced, which can easily lead to accidents. Step gently and repeatedly on the brake pedal in order to warm up the brake until full brake performance has been recovered.

Precautions for passengers

Moving within the vehicle is forbidden

It is forbidden for the passenger to leave his or her seat, or to move around inside the vehicle. Otherwise, during emergency braking, the passenger's body or head, etc., may suffer injurious impact.

Do not extend your hands or head outside the vehicle window or sunroof

If you stretch your hands or head out of the vehicle, it is prone to hitting against the window frame when braking the vehicle in emergency or closing the window. In this case, it may cause serious injury or even death.

Do not carry child passengers on your lap

When riding as a passenger, do not carry infant or child passengers on your lap even if you are already wearing a seat belt. Further, do not surround or enclose the infant or child using any part of the seat belt; this may cause grievous injury or even death during collisions or emergency braking.

Driving procedures

Child passengers must not be allowed to operate equipment such as vehicle doors, vehicle windows and the sunroof

If child passengers are allowed to operate doors, windows and sunroof, they are at risk of clipping their hands, heads, necks, etc., in the operation, which will result in a serious personal injury.

If the vehicle door is opened during the driving, children, if not restrained correctly, could fall out of the vehicle, consequently causing serious injuries and even death.

Please use a child safety lock and a window lock switch to prevent children from accidents because of an incorrect operation.

Parking the vehicle

Do not park the vehicle close to flammable materials

Do not park your vehicle near flammable materials such as areas with plenty of grass/hay or scrap paper. Fires may be triggered by contact between the hot exhaust pipe and flammable materials.

If there is wood or plywood in the rear of the vehicle, keep the parking distance. If the distance is too close, it may cause fire.

Do not run the vehicle for a long time in poorly ventilated places

Allowing the engine to idle for extended periods in poorly ventilated areas such as garages can cause exhaust gas build-up, thereby causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.

Economic driving

Predictable driving

Maintain a proper distance with the front running vehicle and avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. The stable vehicle speed can increase the range.

Avoiding unnecessary weight

Driving with a heavy load and overload-ing will increase energy consumption. Before driving, remove unnecessary items from the vehicle.

Checking tyre pressure periodically

Too small tyre pressure will increase the rolling resistance, thereby increasing the energy consumption while increasing the tyre wear.

Regular maintenance

Regular maintenance ensures a longer service life and the best economy of your vehicle.

Turning off temporarily unnecessary electrical components

Turn off temporarily unnecessary functions such as the A/C, seat heating and rear window defroster to reduce power use.

Closing windows and sunroof

Opening the windows or the sunroof increases drag, keep them closed when not needed to reduce the energy consumption.

Coasting

The accelerator pedal should be released when approaching the red traffic light or driving downhill, allowing the vehicle to coast by inertia.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving in foggy weather

Turn on the fog lamps

While driving in fog, you should turn on the fog lamps.

Sound horn to warn pedestrians and vehicles

If you hear the horn of other vehicles, respond immediately by honking your horn to indicate your position.

Drive at low speed and look out for safety

When driving in foggy weather, try to travel at a low speed and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Do not wipe fog on the glass during vehicle running

Due to large temperature difference inside and outside the cab, mist may condensates on the inside surface of the windscreen that can affect driver's sight. In this case, you can use the A/C defrosting function or open the vehicle windows a little to have the same air temperature inside and outside the vehicle. This will prevent condensation to form on the inside surface of windscreen.

If you wish to wipe away the condensation on the windscreen glass, please do so only after bringing the vehicle to a stop. Never try to do so while driving the vehicle.

Driving in the rain

Please drive carefully on slippery road surfaces

As poor vision, foggy windscreen and slippery roads are likely to occur when running on rainy days, please drive carefully.

When performing emergency braking, steering and accelerating on a slippery road, tyres may slip, making it difficult to control the vehicle, which may lead to an accident.

While driving in rain, water film can form between the tyre and the ground. At this time the tyre can easily lose its grip, so for safe driving you should slow down.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

Try to avoid driving in a heavy rain or a rainstorm.

Fording drive

Precautions for fording drive

- › Before fording, confirm that the accumulated water on the road does not go above the lower edge of the vehicle body. If there is a large quantity of accumulated water on the road or the water depth is unknown, the vehicle should take a detour and not go through a direct course.
- › Analyse the road conditions and do not drive into an unfamiliar area where there may be hidden obstacles such as ditches or manholes.
- › When fording, keep low speed (speed should not exceed 10 km/h) and do not park or shift gears.
- › When the vehicle passes an intersection, try to avoid the waves generated by the preceding vehicle to prevent water from entering the front grille.
- › When fording, if a fault occurs that causes the vehicle to be powered off (shut down) and fail to drive, do not attempt to start the vehicle again at this time. Please consult the service provider immediately for treatment.

Inspection and maintenance after fording

Promptly do the following after safely driving through water:

- › Depress the brake pedal lightly several times and check whether all brake functions are working.
- › Test the horn.
- › Test all the vehicle lights.
- › Head to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for routine inspection. During fording drive, water may enter the components and parts of transmission system and dilute lubricant, which may lead to system malfunctions.

CAUTION

- › Fording drive is only applicable in emergency situations and it cannot be used as a part of routine driving.
- › Fording drive may damage the motor controller, traction battery pack, transmission system and other components, resulting in serious damage to the vehicle.
- › Do not drive through salty waters, beaches or salt water areas as salt may cause vehicle corrosion. If you drive through the above areas, immediately use fresh water to flush all parts that have been in contact with salt water.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

In hot weather

Hot weather and high temperature in summer are bad for the normal vehicle running and the health of driver. To ensure driving safety, the driver shall pay attention to the following items:

To prevent the engine from overheating

The engine is prone to overheating in the hot season due to higher ambient temperature. Therefore, please step up the inspection and maintenance of the engine cooling system, and remove debris embedded in the radiator chips.

Preventing flat tyre

As air pressure in the vehicle tyre rises with temperature increase, flat tyre is likely to occur in case of hot weather and high temperature in hot season. If you experience a flat tyre in the course of the drive, hold the steering wheel securely, step gently on the brake pedal to decelerate, and avoid actions such as emergency braking or sudden steering. Failure to adhere to the advice may cause the vehicle to go out of control.

Preventing sunstroke

Strong sunlight and high temperature in hot season easily lead to sunstroke. Keep the driving room well ventilated and prohibit fatigue driving.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave a child in the vehicle unattended.

- › Leaving children alone in the vehicle during hot seasons can easily cause heat stroke, dehydration, personal injury or even death.
- › If the child, left alone in the vehicle, plays with matches, lighters other items, it is easy to cause vehicle fire accidents.

⚠ CAUTION

When parking the vehicle, do not leave items such as lighters, spray can, soft drink cans, spectacles, etc., inside the vehicle.

- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, a leakage of gas from the lighter, spray cans or cracks in these containers can lead to fire.
- › Should a soft drink can burst inside the vehicle, its contents may splash onto electrical components and cause short circuit.
- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, it is easy to make resin lens or glasses deformation, resulting in crack.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Driving in cold season

Winter tyre

In cold season when the temperature is low, due to the special characteristics of the normal tyres (tyre width, rubber composition and pattern type, etc.), the elasticity of tyres decreases, further weakening the traction and braking force. At the same time, the tyres noise will be increased. In severe cases, it can even lead to serious cracks, abnormal wear and tear and other permanent damage of normal tyres. It is recommended to use winter tyres when the temperature is lower than 7°C in cold season. Winter tyres can not only greatly improve the vehicle control stability, but also improve the vehicle braking response and shorten the braking distance.

NOTICE

Although all-weather tyres with M + S markings are better for cold season, they fail to achieve the performance of winter tyres. Therefore, it is still necessary to use winter tyres for driving on snowy or icy roads.

WARNING

Although winter tyres can improve the vehicle driving performance in winter, do not drive at risk situation, and still keep cautious!

- › Be sure to adjust your speed and driving style based on visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.
- › Do not exceed the speed limit and load rating indicated on the installed winter tyres when driving.

CAUTION

When the pattern of winter tyres is severely worn, their applicability to cold season will be largely lost. If winter tyres have aged, their applicability to cold season will largely be lost even though the tyre pattern wear is insignificant. Consult the dealer for specific replacement standards of winter tyres.

Instructions for using winter tyres:

- › You must comply with the relevant laws and regulations of the country where the winter tyres are used.
- › The four wheels must have winter tyres installed at the same time.
- › Always use winter tyres having the same size as the normal tyre.
- › Winter tyres having the same model, size (rolling circumference) and type must be used.
- › Winter tyres can only be used during the cold season.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › Be sure to comply with the allowable maximum limits for winter tyres (such as maximum speed, maximum load, etc.). Otherwise, tyres may be damaged, causing traffic accidents.
- › Do not reverse the rotation direction of the tyres.

Snow chains

The use of snow chains depends on the current standards in specific countries or regions, and the installation of snow chains must comply with local regulations.

Install snow chains on the drive wheels only. Do not install snow chains on only one tyre. Install snow chains following the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer and tighten them as tightly as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions when installing snow chains:

- › Improper size or installation of snow chains will damage the vehicle brake pipeline, the suspension, the body and tyres, etc. Choose suitable snow chains and ensure that they are properly installed.
- › Install snow chains in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and set the warning triangle behind the vehicle.

- › Always set the power supply mode to OFF and apply the parking brake before installing the snow chains.
- › Do not install snow chains on emergency wheels or small size spare tyres.
- › Do not install snow chains when the tyre pressure is low.
- › Do not damage aluminium alloy wheel rim when using snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions when driving with snow chains:

- › After installing snow chains, the driving speed should not exceed 40 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the snow chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.
- › After installing snow chains, always check that the snow chains are properly installed after travelling 0.5 to 1.0 kilometres to ensure safety. Retighten or reinstall the snow chains if they are loose.
- › After installing snow chains, the vehicle control may be adversely affected. Operations such as sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking should be avoided as much as possible; otherwise accidents may occur.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › When driving, if you hear the snow chains knocking on the vehicle body or chassis, stop the vehicle and re-tighten the snow chains. If you can still hear the sound, slow down until the sound disappears.
- › Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- › Slow down before entering the curve, so that you can control the vehicle.
- › Remove the snow chains when driving on road surfaces without snow, or they may affect driving performance and severely damage tyres.

WARNING

When parking on snowy roads, shut down the vehicle powertrain.

- › If the engine is running at the start of the vehicle with snow accumulated around it, exhaust gas may seep inside the vehicle interior, causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.

- › When you feel that exhaust gas comes into the vehicle, you can take the following measures:

Drive the vehicle to a ventilated area and lower all the windows.

Set the A/C to the external circulation mode, adjust the airflow to the maximum, and introduce fresh air from the outside into the vehicle.

Off-road driving alerts

Off-road driving has a lot of fun, but that doesn't mean drivers can take it lightly. At all times drivers should take the situations they face seriously and carefully, and not take risks in dangerous areas. Otherwise, it can be very dangerous if things go wrong.

When you drive off-road, safety is of paramount importance and should be our first priority at all times. Before driving, ensure that all passengers wear their seat belts and that all items are securely fastened to prevent danger from moving objects in the vehicle while it is moving. When driving off-road, do not grasp the spokes of the steering wheel as the violent bumps could twist the wheel and injure your hands.

If you are going to drive through a river, check the depth of the water and the solidity of the bottom of the riverbed first, drive slowly and avoid deep water area. If necessary, take the necessary safety measures to ensure that the engine or other components are not damaged by water immersion.

After driving over grass, mud, gravel, sand or river, check whether there are weeds, branches, gravel, sand etc. at the bottom of the body. Remove such debris. If the vehicle continues running with such debris, the vehicle may malfunction or a fire may occur.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

After driving over sand, mud, water or snow, check whether the brake functions normally.

After driving over sand, check the brake system. The mud and sand adhering to the brake disc can affect the braking effect and may damage brake system components.

If you drive in dusty conditions or on sand, the air filter will be severely affected, so take at least one spare filter with you. For driving in dusty conditions, the air filter shall be checked daily. Check the air filter immediately after driving on sand. If any abnormal condition is found during the inspection, duly clean or replace the air filter. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

Higher ground clearance allows the driver to have better vision, detect road conditions in time and adjust the driving style according to the specific terrain conditions.

Before returning to the highway after off-road driving, clean the tyres to remove foreign objects such as mud and small stones. Otherwise, a large amount of mud and stones on the tyres may cause serious damage to windscreen and other components when you drive at a high speed on the highway. Also, check whether the tyres are in good condition and check the tyre tread and sides for breakage to ensure that there is no damage to the tyres that could cause a tyre burst due to high speed driving. Also, remove mud and dust from the lights, windows, windscreens and the license plate.

WARNING

- › Due to high ground clearance and high centre of gravity, avoid high speed driving, sudden start, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Otherwise, the vehicle may lose control or overturn due to incorrect operation. Caution shall also be exercised in driving especially when goods are loaded on the roof luggage rack, as loading goods will raise the vehicle's centre of gravity again.
- › Slow down in the event of a crosswind. The vehicle with higher ground clearance and centre of gravity is more susceptible to a crosswind, and lowering the speed will give you better control of the vehicle.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › When driving on rough roads, do not drive too fast, jump or hit objects; otherwise, the vehicle may lose control or overturn, resulting in serious injury or death, and thus seriously damaging the suspension and chassis.
- › When the vehicle needs to be driven on a steep slope, it is best to drive straight up or down the steep slope rather than driving sideways on it. Driving sideways on a steep slope may lead to a rollover due to the high centre of gravity.
- › Check the air filter and related lines for water.
- › Check the air filter for sand and clean it in time.
- › Check whether there is mud or debris adhering to the radiator, the condenser, the oil cooler, the intercooler and the fan, and clean them in time.
- › Check the motor for water or mud in a timely manner and clean it up.
- › Check whether the tyre pressure is normal and whether there are cracks or damage on tyre treads and sides.
- › Depress the brake pedal lightly several times and check whether all brake functions are working.
- › Check the shock absorber for damage or oil leakage.

Advice on inspection and maintenance

Once you drive off-road in poor road conditions such as sand (dusty roads), mud, water and salt roads, check the following items duly and carry out maintenance or repairs as needed:

- › Test the horn.
- › Test all the vehicle lights.
- › Check the bottom of the vehicle for oil and fluid leakage.
- › Check whether all components on the bottom of the vehicle are in good condition. Duly remove hay and other debris to eliminate potential hazards that could cause breakdowns and fires.
- › Check the differential, the transmission and the transfer case for water or mud.

Advice on driving during run-in period

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

⚠ CAUTION

- › The friction linings and brake disk may wear to different degrees depending on the using condition and the driving method.
- › Due to the vehicle speed, braking force and environmental conditions (such as temperature and humidity), there may be noise when braking, which is normal.

Tyres

Take extra care in the first 500 km when driving with a set of new tyres.

New tyres do not offer optimal grip until they have been broken-in.

Friction lining of brake pad

New friction lining of brake hardly achieves optimal braking effect within first 400 km vehicle running.

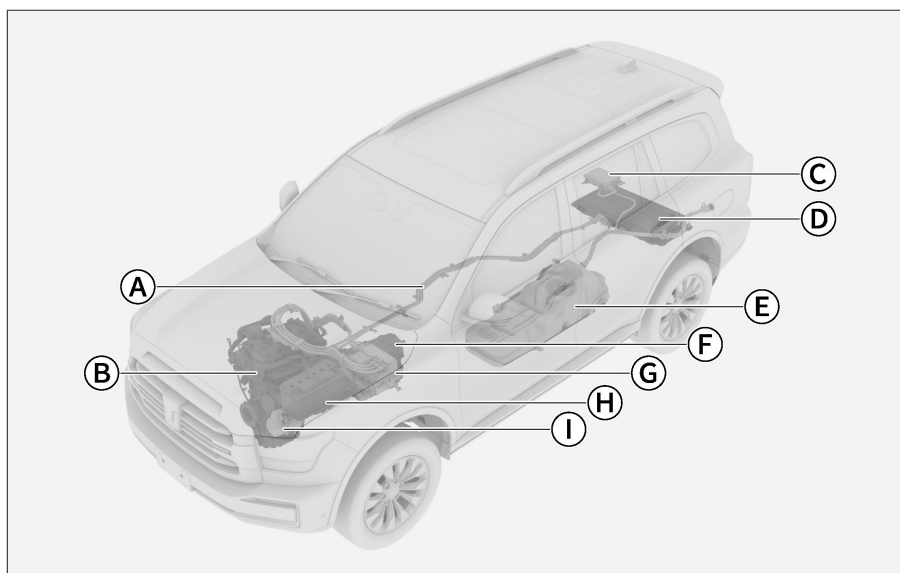
New friction lining of brake must also be run-in to achieve the best friction performance. If you feel that the braking force of the vehicle is insufficient, you can step on the brake pedal to increase the braking force.

During the run-in period, avoid applying extra load on the brake. For example, emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About hybrid vehicle



37EA4B60450D

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| Ⓐ High-voltage wiring harness | Ⓕ Transmission |
| Ⓑ Engine | Ⓖ Motor controller |
| Ⓒ DC/DC converter | Ⓖ Battery |
| Ⓓ Power battery pack | Ⓖ A/C compressor |
| Ⓔ Fuel tank | |

This vehicle is a hybrid vehicle, which is different from ordinary fuel vehicles in characteristics. Please be familiar with the characteristics of the hybrid vehicle and drive it carefully.

Hybrid vehicle

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not touch, remove or replace parts with high-voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on the vehicle to prevent high-voltage electric shock.
- › After the vehicle is started, the power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning label.

2

Driving

The hybrid system uses a combination of the engine and the drive motor depending on the vehicle operating conditions and driving mode, thereby improving fuel efficiency and reducing emissions.

- › The drive motor usually drives the vehicle at a low speed.
- › The engine generally drives the vehicle at high speed or during more active driving.

Power battery recovery

For the replacement and disposal of the power battery, please always consult authorised service centre and get the recovery requirements. Discarding the power battery arbitrarily will may pollute the environment or cause safety accidents.

⚠ WARNING

- › Never sell, transfer or modify the power battery.
If the power battery is used outside the vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, burn, smoke, electrolyte leakage and explosion may occur.
- › Do not dispose of the power battery by yourself. Otherwise, it will pollute the environment and electric shock may occur.
- › To ensure your safety, do not open or modify the power battery pack under any circumstances. If the power battery needs to be repaired, disassembled, replaced and scrapped, it shall be handed over to the authorised service centre for disposal.

High-voltage warning signs

⚠ WARNING

- › Only professionals should operate the parts of the vehicle with high-voltage warning signs.

Hybrid vehicle

- Any person must not use fingers, tools, decorations or other metal objects to approach or touch the parts where the high-voltage warning signs are pasted.
- The gas leaked or escaped from the traction battery pack may be toxic or flammable. Stay away from the vehicle in the event of an accident to avoid personal injury or even death.

High-voltage signs



C40E90CFEA3D

These signs are located on high-voltage parts to remind you of the following:

- There is high voltage inside these parts.
- Never remove, repair or replace the part without authorization, and pay attention to the relevant matters.
- Do not touch high-voltage parts, otherwise, there may be a risk of electric shock.

Traction battery labels

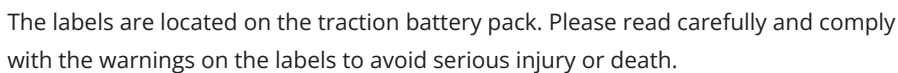
Type I



B4ADC49EFD38

Type II

Driving



The labels may vary between countries and regions in their appearance and language. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Energy recovery

The function is mainly used to convert a part of kinetic energy of the vehicle during braking or coasting into electric energy of the power battery, thereby extending the distance to empty.

The energy recovery level can be set through the **【Car】** → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

WARNING

The reduction of vehicle speed caused by energy recovery cannot replace normal braking. The brake pedal shall be depressed during deceleration and parking.

NOTICE

When the vehicle decelerates obviously as the energy recovery function is activated, the brake lamp may be turned on.

NOTICE

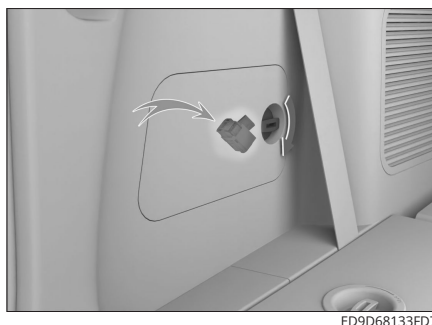
The energy recovery will not be carried out when the vehicle is under the following conditions:

- › The vehicle is in N gear position.
- › The power battery is fully charged.
- › The temperature of the power battery is too high or too low.

Battery safety switch

Type I

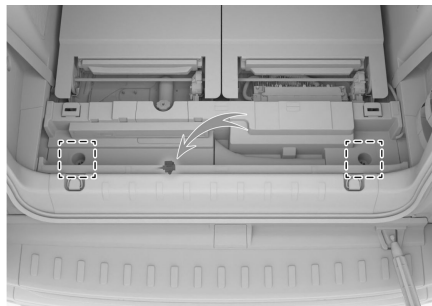
The battery safety switch is located in the left trim panel of the luggage area, and is used to disconnect or connect the power supply to the high voltage system.



Rotate the fixing knob on the cover as shown in the figure, and remove the cover on the left trim panel to reveal the battery safety switch.

Type II

The battery safety switch is located at the rear end of the luggage area, and is used to disconnect or connect the power supply to the high voltage system.



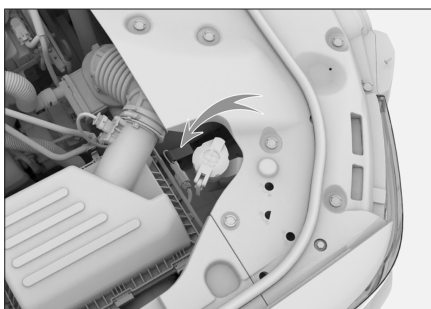
Hybrid vehicle

Turn the fixing knobs on both sides of the luggage area cover clockwise to remove the cover. Remove the fixing nuts on both sides of the on-board toolkit tray and remove the on-board toolkit tray to reveal the battery safety switch.

WARNING

Do not attempt to operate the battery safety switch. The battery safety switch is only used when servicing the vehicle and performing operations related to high voltage system.

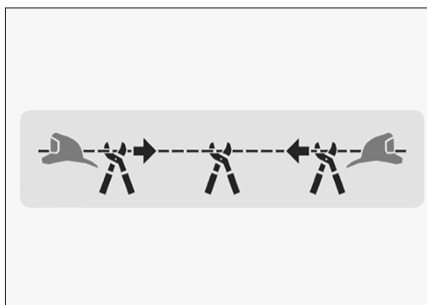
Emergency cut-off point



584668D4C195

The emergency cut-off point is located in front of the engine compartment air filter and is a section of low-voltage wiring harness marked with the emergency cut-off sign. In an emergency, to ensure the safety of personnel and the smooth implementation of emergency rescue, the wiring harness can be cut.

Emergency cut-off sign



DD512F2B9979

In case of emergency cut-off, it is necessary to cut the low-voltage wiring harness 2 to 3 times at intervals within the effective range. Cutting the wiring harness only once will easily lead to secondary reconnection of the wiring harness, resulting in serious personal injury.

Power supply switch

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Power supply mode switching

When carrying the smart key, directly press the power supply switch to change the power supply mode.



8192CF36687D

No.	Mode	Effect
1	OFF	Electrical components are in the non-working state.
2	ON	All electrical components can be used.

When the smart key is in the vehicle, if the following conditions are met, press the power supply switch to start the vehicle.

- › Step on the brake pedal.
- › The gear is in P gear position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not switch the power supply to OFF mode while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not place the smart key on the instrument panel, on the ground, on the instrument cluster, in the storage box or in the luggage area. Otherwise, power supply mode cannot be switched.
- › When the vehicle is not started, do not keep the power supply in the ON mode for an extended period of time to prevent loss of battery power.
- › When you leave vehicle, switch the power supply to OFF mode and carry the key with you.

Steering wheel unlock

Under normal circumstances

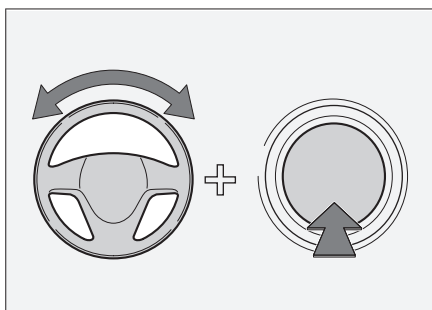
Under normal circumstances, press the power supply switch, and set the power supply to ON to unlock the steering wheel synchronously.

Power supply switch

Failing to unlock the steering wheel

2

Driving



If the instrument cluster indicates that ESCL unlock has failed when the power supply mode is changed or the vehicle is started, gently turn the steering wheel to the right and left and press the power supply switch as well to unlock it.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Starting the vehicle

Normal starting

1. Carry the smart key with you.
2. Adjust the seat position and take correct driving posture.
3. Confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
4. Confirm that the P gear position is engaged.
5. Step on the brake pedal.
6. Press the power supply switch to start the vehicle. (At this time, the indicator light **READY** in the instrument cluster is on, indicating that the drive system is ready.)

i NOTICE

After the vehicle is started, the engine will be started or stopped automatically according to the vehicle state.


Remote starting

All doors, the tailgate and the hood are closed, and the power supply is in OFF mode. After pressing the lock button on the key, press the vehicle locating button within 1 second to start the vehicle remotely.

Emergency starting



5619A3CAEA2A

When the vehicle prompts that "Please confirm whether the key is in the vehicle", it may be that the vehicle cannot be started due to the power loss of the smart key. At this time, please put the key in the position with  marking in the front armrest box, and then try to start the vehicle. If it still cannot be started, please contact the authorised service centre immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- › Be sure to sit on the driver's seat before starting the vehicle. Failure to do so may lead to accident, serious injuries or even death.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

- › Do not step on the accelerator pedal under any circumstances when starting the vehicle.
- › Always start the vehicle even if you need to move the vehicle slightly. Otherwise, an accident may occur.

i NOTICE

- › Serious damage to the door guard or rear bumper may also cause the vehicle to fail to start.
- › Try not to store the vehicle in an environment with a very low temperature, otherwise, the vehicle may not be able to start.

Shutting down the vehicle

Normal shutdown

1. After the vehicle is stopped steadily, switch to the P gear position.
2. Press the power supply switch to shut down the vehicle.

! WARNING

Do not touch high-temperature components such as the engine, exhaust pipe, and radiator immediately after shutting down the engine. Otherwise, you may be burned.

i NOTICE

After the engine has operated at a high speed or with high load for a long time, it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for a short time or drive at a low speed for some distance.

Emergency shutdown

During driving, in the case of an emergency, for example, failure to stop in a normal way, you can shut down the vehicle through any of the following operations:

- › Press and hold the power supply switch for more than 2 seconds.
- › Press the power supply switch for 3 consecutive times within 2 seconds.

! WARNING

- › Shutting down the vehicle while driving may cause a collision or major personal injury.
- › Do not forcibly shut down the vehicle while driving in non-emergency situations.

When the vehicle is forcibly shut down, the brake and steering wheel power will be lost. As a result, it is more laborious to step on the brake pedal and the steering wheel is heavier. Therefore, decelerate as much as possible before shutting down the vehicle.

Parking brake

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

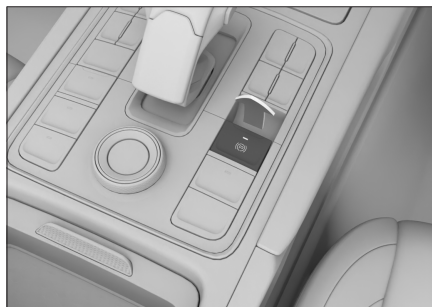
Tips for safety

WARNING

- › Parking on a slope steeper than the prescribed limit may cause an accident. Please drive safely and avoid risky parking situations.
- › If the slope is too steep, use of the parking brake system will not be able to stop your vehicle completely. In this case, step on the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Electronic parking brake

Applying the parking brake



9D382949B4B2

- › Stop the vehicle, turn off the power supply switch, and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is automatically applied.

If you do not need to apply the parking brake, press the EPB switch and then turn off the power supply switch.

- › When the vehicle is stationary, pull up the EPB switch to apply the parking brake.

NOTICE

The parking brake indicator light (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel goes on after the parking brake is applied.

Emergency braking

In case of emergency, pull up the EPB switch and hold it to brake the vehicle urgently.

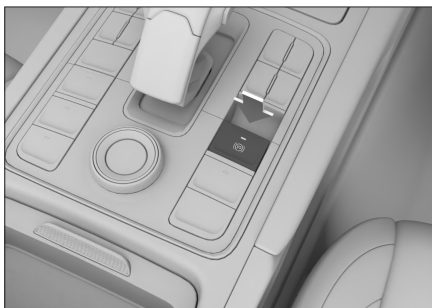
Emergency braking can be cancelled as long as the EPB switch is released or the accelerator pedal is stepped on.

Parking brake

⚠ WARNING

The emergency braking function can only be used in the event of an emergency (e.g. the brake pedal is blocked).

Releasing the parking brake



4D1D8856E4B3

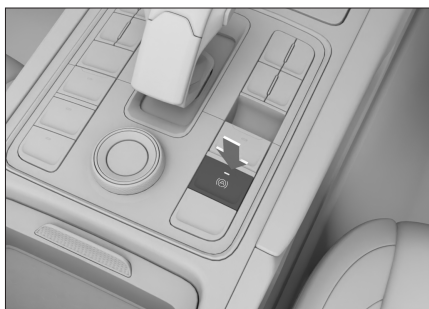
When the power supply is in the ON mode, step on the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the parking brake.

i NOTICE

- › The parking brake indicator light (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel goes out after the parking brake is released.
- › When the vehicle is powered off and powered on again, and the parking brake fault warning light (Ⓢ) goes on, please try the following options:
Pull up the EPB switch first, then depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the EPB normally. If the warning light remains on, contact the authorised service centre.

AVH function

This function can automatically brake the vehicle with the vehicle fully stopped, when the vehicle is on the slop, waiting at red lights or halting from time to time. You don't need to step on the brake pedal for a long time or frequently apply the parking brake. It allows the driver to drive more comfortably and reduces the risk of rolling.



B5A59E5CCDF1

After the driver door is closed, the driver seat belt is fastened, and the vehicle is started, press the AVH switch to turn on or turn off the AVH function.

1. Turn on the AVH function.

At this time, the AVH function is in the ready state, and the AVH indicator light (Ⓢ) on instrument panel goes on in yellow.

2. This function will automatically brake the vehicle with the brake pedal depressed during driving.

At this time, this function is in operation, and the AVH indicator light (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel goes on in green.

Parking brake

3. Step on the accelerator pedal and the parking brake is automatically released.

If the accelerator pedal is not pressed down for a long time, it will automatically switch to electric parking to apply braking force. At this time, the automatic parking function is ready for use.

To avoid vehicle rolling on the slope, you need to step on accelerator pedal at proper time to increase power output for vehicle starting.

NOTICE

The following conditions will deactivate the AVH function forcedly:

- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › Switch the power supply mode to OFF.
- › The AVH function has been working for more than 3 minutes.

CAUTION

In the case of automatic vehicle washing, towing, etc., turn off the AVH function.

Automatic departure function

When the driver fastens the seat belt, starts the vehicle, engages a gear position and steps on the accelerator pedal, the parking brake will be automatically released after the system detects the driver's intention to leave.

Gear shifting

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to gear positions

Park (P) gear position

The P gear position is used to assist in parking the vehicle. When the P gear position is engaged, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Reverse (R) gear position

The R gear position is used for reversing.

Neutral (N) gear position

The N gear position is an unpowered gear position, and the transmission system is in a state of not transmitting power when this gear position is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

- › When stopping the vehicle temporarily in the N gear position, be sure to apply parking brake or depress the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.
- › Vehicles are prohibited from coasting with the N gear position engaged; otherwise, there is a risk of accidents.

Automatic mode (D)

The D gear position is recommended for normal driving.

When the D gear position is engaged, the transmission can automatically adjust to the appropriate gear position based on the vehicle speed and the required acceleration, to achieve the best economy.

Manual mode (M)

The M gear position is recommended for speeding up and overtaking or driving uphill and downhill.

Lower gear positions of M gear position are recommended for bumpy road, ramp and the like.

Gear shifting

Gear shifting method

After the vehicle is started, normal gear shifting operations can be performed. Before starting the vehicle, you should always step on the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle will move by itself after releasing the parking brake in gear D, R or M.

WARNING

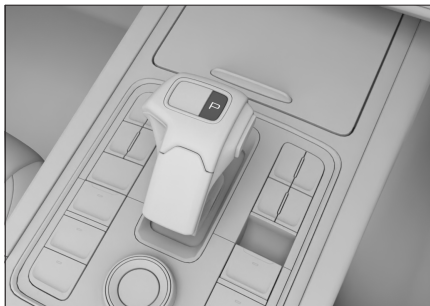
In order to avoid the damage to the vehicle or accidents, the vehicle must be completely stopped before the gear is shifted.

NOTICE

After the shift operation is completed, please confirm that the correct gear is engaged according to the instrument panel prompt.

Engaging the gear P

When the vehicle is stationary, press the gear P button.



D837E6033B3F

NOTICE

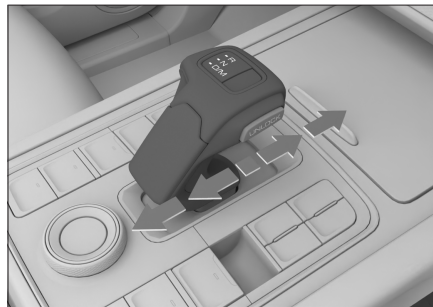
When the power supply is in the ON mode, under the following conditions, the vehicle will automatically be switched to the gear P.

- › The vehicle is stationary, the gear N is not engaged and the power supply is set to the OFF mode.
- › The vehicle is stationary, and the driver seat belt is not worn, and the driver door is opened.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is stationary and gear N is engaged, switch the power supply to the OFF mode, the gear will remain in gear N, which is convenient for temporary pushing.

Engaging the gear D, R, N or M



8231A95843B1

Move the shift lever 1 or 2 position (s) in the desired direction to switch between different gears. The current gear will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Gear shifting

For disengagement of gear P or engagement of gear R, you need to depress the brake pedal and press the **【UNLOCK】** button; For engagement of gear D, you need to depress the brake pedal.

If you want to switch from the gear D to the gear N, move the shift lever forwards by 1 position. If you want to switch from the gear R to the gear N, move the shift lever backwards by 1 position.

After engaging the gear D, you can push the lever backwards into the gear M and push it backwards again to move the lever back to the gear D.

Gear shifting method in manual mode

i NOTICE

When the vehicle is in the gear M, if the engine speed is too low, the transmission will automatically shift to the appropriate gear; but the transmission will not automatically upshift when the engine speed is high, please manually shift the gear at this time.



9EA18EE4A583

The paddle shifter allows you to shift up or down without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

- > **【-】** : downshift paddle
- > **【+】** : upshift paddle

When driving in the gear M, move the paddle shifter to upshift or downshift manually.

When driving in the gear D, move the paddle shifter to temporarily activate the gear M. In this case, you can upshift or downshift manually by pushing the paddle shifter.

When driving in the gear M temporarily, lift and hold the upshift paddle or do not operate the paddle shifter for a long time, and the gear M will be returned to the gear D.

Unlocking P gear position in an emergency

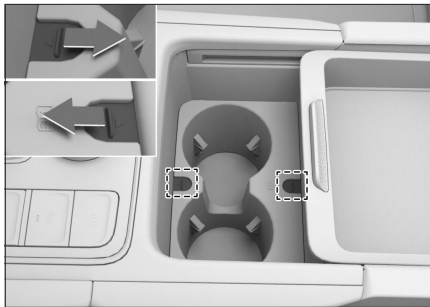
If you cannot shift from the P gear position to another gear position under normal conditions, you can unlock the P gear position for emergency.

Gear shifting

⚠ CAUTION

- › In case of this breakdown, contact the authorised service centre and such breakdown shall be solved by the professionals. The operation, without any authorization, may damage the vehicle related parts.
- › When the emergency unlocking is required, it indicates that the vehicle has problems, go to the authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

1. Switch the power supply mode to ON and open the front armrest box.
2. Toggle the two switches in the direction of the arrow, and then take out the cup holder.



3. Remove the rubber mat.



4. At the notch, use a flat-head screwdriver wrapped with cloth to pry open the cover plate, and you can see the P gear position unlocking handle.

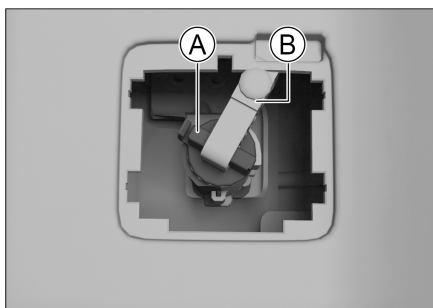


5. Turn the P gear position unlocking handle counterclockwise about 60 degrees to make it enter into the slide slot.

Gear shifting

2

Driving



C32C0087920F

- ① P gear position unlocking handle
 - ② Cable
6. Pull up the cable to pull the unlocking handle to the top and hold it for about 18 seconds. When the instrument panel shows the N gear position or the N gear position indicator light of the shift lever is on, it means that the P gear position is successfully unlocked. At this time, the transmission is in N gear position. Release the cable.
 7. When the vehicle is moved, apply the parking brake, and reset the P gear position unlocking handle according to the opposite operation procedure as described above.

i NOTICE

If any of the following conditions occur, the transmission will automatically return to P gear position. If necessary, please re-execute the operation steps for emergency unlocking of P gear position.

- › The power supply mode is switched.

- › When parking, the driver opens the driver side door without wearing a seat belt.

Crawling function

Once the vehicle has started, shift to the D gear position, and release the parking brake and the brake pedal. When the resistance to the vehicle is low, there is no need to depress the accelerator pedal at this point and the vehicle can crawl slowly.

Starting off

Normal starting off

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal and engage the gear D.

If you need more traction when starting (such as starting on a ramp, etc.), engage the gear M.

4. Release the brake pedal and then gently step on the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

i NOTICE

When you start off the vehicle, the automatic departure function will automatically release the parking brake.

Launch control

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
2. Start the vehicle, turn off the electronic stability control system and switch the driving mode to sport mode.
3. Depress the brake pedal with your left foot, switch the gear to the gear D, and release the parking brake.
4. Depress the accelerator pedal completely with your right foot, and the instrument prompts 【Launch control activated】.
5. After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle begins launch control until the vehicle is totally started.

i NOTICE

- › If you depress the brake pedal or release the accelerator pedal during launch control process, the launch control mode will exit.
- › If the brake pedal is not released for a long time (about 5 seconds), the vehicle enters a timeout state, and the instrument prompts 【Launch control timeout】 to protect the clutch and the brake system. When the vehicle is in timeout state, release the brake and accelerator pedals before exiting the timeout state for the next launch control.

⚠ CAUTION

Compared with normally starting off, the launch control will increase the load for relevant parts of drive system and aggravate the wear and deterioration of the clutch. To protect the service life of the hardware, do not continuously use this function without restriction.

⚠ WARNING

- › Be sure to drive carefully to the extent permitted by law.
- › The function can be used only when you judge it is safe according to the surrounding traffic conditions.
- › The function cannot be used when the vehicle runs on slippery roads. Otherwise, the vehicle will get out of control, causing an accident.

Parking

1. After releasing the accelerator pedal, depress the brake pedal.

i NOTICE

This vehicle uses an electronic brake booster system, which is slightly different from the model equipped with the vacuum power-assisted brake system. For example, after stepping on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, you can continue to step it to the maximum position (step to the bottom), which is a normal phenomenon.

Gear shifting

2. After the engine speed is stable, engage the P gear position.
3. Apply the parking brake or shut down the vehicle engine directly as required.

NOTICE

After the vehicle engine is shut down, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

4. Release the brake pedal.

CAUTION

- › When it is necessary to stop the vehicle temporarily at the slope, the brake pedal must be stepped on or the parking brake must be applied. Do not use accelerate pedal or crawling function to keep the vehicle stable, otherwise the transmission will be damaged.
- › Do not engage the P gear position to park on the slope. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.
- › When stopping the vehicle on a slope, wedge the wheels if necessary to prevent rolling.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Comfortable braking

You can activate or deactivate the comfortable braking function through

【Car】 → 【Driving】 → 【Comfortable braking】 on the multimedia display screen.

During normal braking and stopping, the comfortable braking function can provide a smooth braking feeling for the driver, reducing the abruptness or jerkiness during braking.

During emergency braking and stopping, the comfortable braking function will automatically exit to avoid any negative impact on the braking operation.

i NOTICE

The comfortable braking function only takes effect when the vehicle is in the forward gear and braking at low speeds, as well as on flat roads or roads with slight slopes.

Steering wheel assist modes

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering wheel assist mode switching

Separate switching: when the power supply is in ON mode, you can switch the steering wheel assist mode through **【Car】** → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Linkage switching: when you switch to the all-terrain control system, the steering wheel assist mode is also switched by linkage.

All-terrain mode	Steering wheel assist mode
Sport, snow	Sport
ECO	Light
Standard, mud, sand, 4H, 4L, rock, wading	Comfort

i NOTICE

When switching between steering wheel assist modes, the following conditions need to be met:

- › The electric power steering system is functioning correctly.
- › The speed of the vehicle is less than 125 km/h.
- › No apparent turn operation has been carried out.

Light

It increases steering power for easy steering. It is applicable to traffic congestion driving environment such as urban areas.

Comfort

It is suitable for general driving habits.

Sport

It reduces steering power and increases steering wheel feedback. It is recommended to use it under high speed, rain and snow and other cases.

All-terrain control system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

All-terrain control system introduction

In complex road conditions, depending on the selected driving mode, the system will automatically optimize the vehicle's control systems to suit the terrain, improving steering ability, stability and cross-country capability.

All-terrain mode switching

⚠ CAUTION

- › Using the driving modes incorrectly will cause the vehicle to respond incorrectly to road conditions, reducing the life of the suspension and transmission systems.
- › Before the vehicle enters a complex terrain, the driver should judge the terrain in advance and activate the appropriate all-terrain mode to prevent the vehicle from losing control.

Switching method



- › When the vehicle power supply is in the ON mode, and not in the 4L, rock, or 4L wading mode:

Turn the knob to switch to ECO, standard, sport, snow, sand, mud, 4H and wading modes.

Press the AUTO button to switch to the intelligent all-terrain mode.

- › When pressing the 4L button to enter or exit the 4L mode, you must engage the gear N and keep the vehicle stationary.

When not in wading mode, press the 4L button to switch to the 4L mode.

In wading mode, press the 4L button to switch to the 4L wading mode.

Press the 4L button again to return to the wading mode.


When the vehicle is in 4L or 4L wading mode, turn the knob to switch between the 4L, rock and 4L wading modes.

In 4L or rock mode, press the 4L button to return to the last used all-terrain mode.

All-terrain control system

i NOTICE

- › While the vehicle is running, for driving safety, when the vehicle speed exceeds 85 km/h, you can only switch the current mode to the standard, sport and ECO modes. If you switch to other modes, the system will not response. When the vehicle speed is lower than the safety speed, the system will switch to the required mode automatically.
- › After the mode switch is completed, there will be relevant prompts on the instrument and multimedia display screen.
- › If the mode switch is abnormal and relevant alarm information appears on the instrument, please follow the instructions. After confirming that the switching condition is satisfied, try to switch the modes again.
- › With the 4L mode entered or exited, it is normal that there may be a mechanical collision sound and a slight dash of the vehicle.
- › In 4L, rock and 4L wading modes, the indicator light on the 4L button lights up.
- › Straightening the wheels can make entering or exiting the 4L mode smoother.

- › The ESC system is automatically switched off when switching to some all-terrain modes. The ESC OFF indicator light  on the instrument cluster is on, indicating that the ESC is turned off.

! CAUTION

- › While driving in 4L, rock and 4L wading modes, keep the vehicle speed less than 40 km/h and avoid sharp turns. Otherwise, parts of the vehicle may be damaged.
- › Driving is prohibited and the gear must remain in gear N until the 4L mode is successfully entered or exited. Otherwise, the transfer case may be damaged.

Mode introduction

- › AUTO mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads or hard roads covered by a small amount of ice, snow and sand. It can provide you optimized and balanced driving experience on good roads.

In the use of this mode, the system will automatically switch between the ECO, standard or sport modes according to driving conditions.

All-terrain control system

- › ECO mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads. The tuning gives priority to fuel economy to reduce fuel consumption while maintaining driving experience.
- › Standard mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, concrete roads or hard roads covered by little ice. It can provide you optimized and balanced driving experience on good roads.
- › Sport mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads. By increasing the idle speed and delaying the upshift, the system outputs strong power during starting and accelerating.
- › Snow mode: this mode is suitable for light snow, ice, grass, gravel and other slippery roads. The vehicle starts at the second gear position and the power output in 4WD mode is smooth, you can enjoy great driving manoeuvrability and stability.
- › Sand mode: this mode is suitable for dry and soft roads such as Gobi or desert off-road. The response of power output becomes more positive. It is forbidden to use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.
- › Mud mode: this mode is suitable for driving on muddy roads, driving off-road and getting out of trouble. Under this mode, the vehicle can make the best use of all tyres' traction to get strong power and great off-road ability by electronic limited slip. It is forbidden to use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.
- › 4H mode: this mode is suitable for the extrication and trafficability under complex road conditions, and for loose and slippery road conditions such as mountains, rainforests, and shallow mud. It can optimize the accelerator control to improve response and torque output.
- › 4L mode: this mode is suitable for large slope climbing, vehicle rescue and other road conditions. By increasing the reduction ratio by one stage, the vehicle is given the maximum traction, providing effective power support for going over steep slopes and for the vehicle rescue.
- › Rock mode: this mode is suitable for climbing on steps or rocks, and it also can automatically lock differential lock provided for the vehicle to optimise accelerator response and torque output and improve the vehicle climbing ability.

All-terrain control system

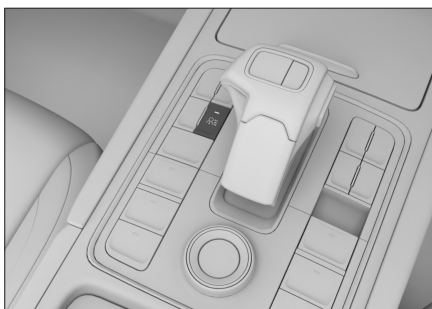
- › Wading, 4L wading mode: suitable for hard roads with accumulated water, it is not recommended to use this mode when approaching the limit wading depth.

⚠ CAUTION


Before wading, turn on the wading mode first. After the mode is turned on, the system will force the engine to start without shutdown. After wading, turn off the wading mode in time. Wading is only applicable in emergency situations and cannot be used as a part of routine driving.

Expert mode


You can customize the vehicle's drive mode, steering mode, suspension mode, 4WD mode, and ESC switch according to your driving needs, so that the vehicle is more suitable for your control mode and comfort.



2A2325D8BCD5

When the power supply is in ON mode and the vehicle is not in wading, 4L, rock or 4L wading mode, press the expert mode button  to enter the expert mode.

i NOTICE

- › If you do not operate for a long time, the expert mode interface will be automatically hidden. Press the expert mode button  at this time to call up the expert mode interface again.
- › While the vehicle is running, for driving safety, when the vehicle speed exceeds 75 km/h, the system will not respond if the expert mode is switched.

Expert mode interface

You can customize up to three modes on the expert mode interface. In addition, you can preset the 【High speed off-road racing mode】 to meet different driving needs.

- › Drive mode: you can select the gentle, comfort and radical modes.

Gentle: with improved vehicle fuel economy, the mode is applicable to urban roads, paved roads and other flat hard road surfaces.

Comfort: integrating vehicle dynamics and economy, the mode is applicable to all kinds of road.

All-terrain control system

Radical: the mode will increase the vehicle power, bring a higher level of responsiveness and driving experience. It is suitable for use on wide, flat roads with few vehicles.

- › Steering mode: you can select the comfort, sport and light modes. Please refer to "Steering wheel assist mode switching" for mode introduction.(▷ Page 134)

- › 4WD mode: you can select the 2H, 4A and 4H modes.

2H: 2WD High-speed, this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads.

4A: 4WD Automatic, this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads or hard roads covered by a small amount of ice, snow and sand.

4H: 4WD High-speed, this mode is suitable for non-paved roads with poor adhesion (such as sandy roads).

⚠ CAUTION

When the vehicle is running in 4H mode, the speed shall be lower than 85 km/h. If the driving speed is too high, avoid sharp turns. Otherwise, the transmission system components may be damaged, and even a risk of roll-over may be caused.

- › ESC setting: you can select ALL-ON, TCS&VDC-OFF and ALL-OFF modes.

ALL-ON: the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is on.

TCS&VDC-OFF : the Traction Control System (TCS) and Vehicle Dynamic Stability Control (VDC) are off.

ALL-OFF: ESC is off.

- › High-speed off-road racing: this mode is suitable for desert off-road racing.

You can tap the **【Reset】** button to restore the default settings.

You can tap the **【Exit mode】** button to exit the expert mode.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the drift and high-speed off-road racing modes have been preset, but the driver can still adjust the settings according to his/her own needs.

When the drift and high-speed off-road racing modes are exited, the settings adjusted by the driver will be reset.

Operating precautions for driving 4WD vehicles

- › It is forbidden to perform 2WD hub tests in snow, mud, sand, wading, rock, 4L and 4H modes (including the operation such as the front wheel does not turning, the rear wheel continuing slipping on the raceway or on the ice and snow road).

All-terrain control system

- › When the vehicle is out of difficulty (for example, when the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc. with wheel slippage), the thermal protection function of the 4WD system may be triggered due to continuous wheel slippage. In this case, stop the effort immediately and park the vehicle to dissipate heat in a safe condition, and wait for the 4WD system to automatically eliminate the overheating alarm and then try again.

After the overheating alarm is released, wait a few more minutes to make the 4WD system cool down fully and recover better performance. If the alarm is not released for a long time, contact the authorised service centre.

- › Ensure that the rolling radius of the four wheel tyres of the vehicle is consistent:

If a tyre needs to be replaced, ensure that all four tyres used on the vehicle after the replacement are of the same brand and model;

If tyre consistency cannot be guaranteed for the time being (including replacement of non-full-size spare tyres), when driving on paved roads or streets (such as normal roads and cement floors), with the instrument indicating "the four-wheel drive system is temporarily locked to 4H", you must immediately reduce the vehicle speed, and switch the driving mode to ECO, and the driving range should not exceed 50 km; Failure to do so will cause damage to the transmission system parts, resulting in a serious malfunction of the vehicle. Please replace the tyres as soon as possible and ensure that the brand and the model of the four tyres are the same;

If there is a tyre pressure warning, it must be confirmed in time, and the tyre pressure should be replenished in time to cancel the warning.

- › Avoid operation in drifting condition.
- › Do not use snow, mud, sand, wading, rock, 4L and 4H modes on paved roads or streets (such as normal roads and cement floors).
- › Do not start the vehicle or turn the tyres when lifting a vehicle in 4L mode with a jack.

Otherwise, the vehicle may detach from the jack and rush out, which is very dangerous.

Off-road cruise control system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Off-road cruise control

Function introduction


The off-road cruise control function allows you to keep the vehicle moving at a set speed without having to depress the accelerator or brake pedal. It can be used when the vehicle is driving on off-road conditions, bumpy road conditions, or when the vehicle is out of trouble.

i NOTICE

- › As the off-road cruise control is designed for off-road driving, the cruise speed is 4 to 12 km/h.
- › Due to the influence of road conditions, cruising speed may fluctuate slightly, which is a normal phenomenon.

⚠ WARNING

- › Off-road cruise control is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions or the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › Improper use of the off-road cruise control may result in a crash.

If the off-road cruise control function is used continuously for a long period of time, some systems may overheat. At this point, a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display and the off-road cruise control indicator light  will go out. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and shut off the engine to cool some systems.

- › When the single-sided wheels slip while the vehicle is in off-road cruise control operation, lock the axle differential lock in time.

i NOTICE

In some cases, off-road cruise control may not be able to maintain a constant low speed, which may lead to an accident. For example:

- › A steep slope
- › Extremely uneven roads

Off-road cruise control system

- › Snow, icy roads, or other wet and slippery roads

i NOTICE

The off-road cruise control function is not available for use when the vehicle is at a high speed.

- › The vehicle is in the 4L, rock or 4L wading mode.
- › Release the parking brake.

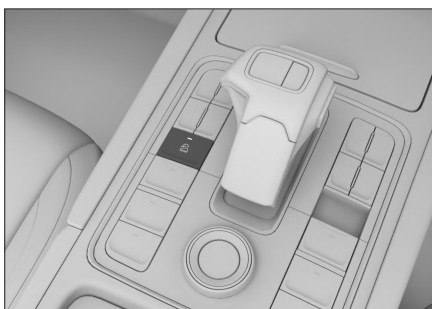
i NOTICE


In the use of off-road cruise control function, due to complex working conditions and uneven roads, the vehicle speed will fluctuate slightly, which is a normal phenomenon.


2

Driving

Turning on and off the system



1. Press the off-road cruise control button  near the shift lever to turn on the off-road cruise control function. Press the button again to deactivate the function.


The off-road cruise control indicator light  on the instrument panel goes on in white, indicating that the function is activated and ready for use.

i NOTICE

To turn on the off-road cruise control function, the following conditions must be met:

- › The driver door is completely closed.
- › Start the vehicle and engage the N gear position.

2. When the D/M gear position is engaged, the off-road cruise control function can automatically go into the cruising working state.

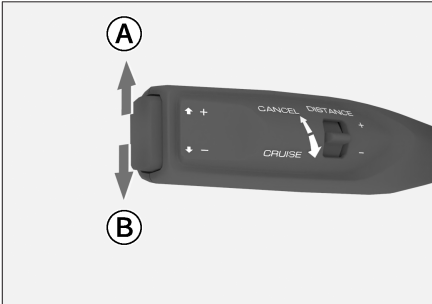
The off-road cruise control indicator light  on the instrument panel goes on green, indicating that the function works.

Cruising speed setting

There are 9 gear positions for cruising speed, which can be set and displayed on the instrument panel by the following methods.

- › Move the control lever to adjust the set speed in the direction of arrow shown.

Off-road cruise control system



E364027A31D5

Ⓐ Acceleration

Ⓑ Deceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, adjust the vehicle speed to the required cruising gear position and release the pedal.

i NOTICE

When the cruising speed exceeds 20 km/h, the off-road cruise control function enters the standby mode; when it exceeds 36 km/h, the off-road cruise control function is automatically turned off.

The following lists some typical terrain and recommended off-road cruise control gear positions. Please refer:

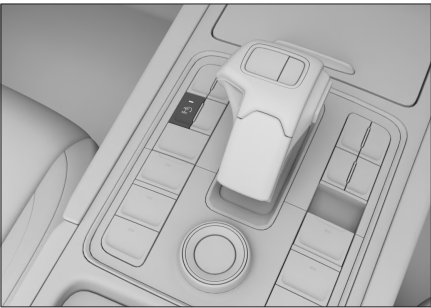
Off-road cruise control gear positions (reference values)	Road conditions
Gear position 1 to 2	Rocky road, bumpy road (downward slope), cross-axis road, etc.

Off-road cruise control gear positions (reference values)	Road conditions
Gear position 3 to 4	Bumpy road (upward slope), gravel road (downward slope), etc.
Gear position 5 to 6	Snow, mud, gravel road (flat road or upward slope), etc.
Gear position 7 to 9	Sand, muddy roads, grassland, etc.

The Tank turning


When you enable the off-road cruise control function, you can turn on the Tank turning function according to your needs to improve the off-road performance of the vehicle and effectively reduce the turning radius while maintaining the set speed, thereby enhancing the turning performance.


Instructions




CF68748DF6BF

Off-road cruise control system

1. After turning on the off-road cruise control function, press the button  to activate the Tank turning function. Press the button again to deactivate the function.

The indicator light  on the instrument panel goes on in white: it indicates that the function is activated and ready for use.

2. Engage the D/M gear position, turn the steering wheel counterclockwise or clockwise to the end, and release the brake pedal, and then the Tank turning function works.

The indicator light  on the instrument panel goes on in green: it indicates that the Tank turning function works.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, the Tank turning function goes into standby state; when the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h, the Tank turning function is automatically turned off.

CAUTION

Do not use the Tank turning function on paved roads. Otherwise, the damage to transmission machinery component and tyre wear will be accelerated.

NOTICE

To use the Tank turning function, the following conditions must be met:

- › The rear axle electric differential lock is not locked.
- › The accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not pressed deeply.

NOTICE

This function works best when it is used at the lowest off-road cruising speed.

Vehicle equipment

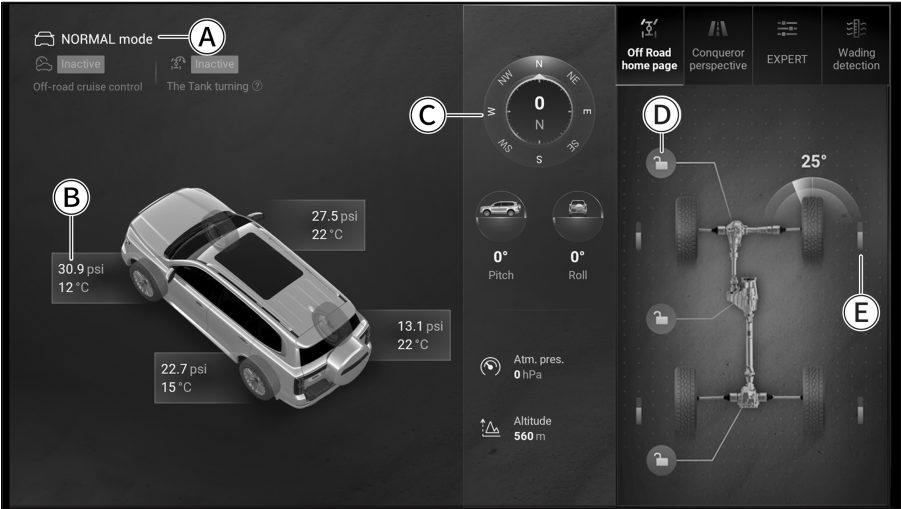
Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

OFFROAD mode

Touch the **Application → 【OFF ROAD mode】** button on the multimedia display screen to enter the OFF ROAD mode interface.

i NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle configurations, the country or the region, some features may not be fitted to your vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.



- Ⓐ All-terrain mode
- Ⓑ Tyre temperature and tyre pressure
- Ⓒ Vehicle head direction
- Ⓓ Differential lock state
- Ⓔ Torque distribution trend

Off Road home page

You can view off-road related information on this interface.

➢ **【Wheel rotation】** : it displays the wheel rotation and angle.

OFFROAD mode

- › Differential lock state: it displays the differential lock state locked or unlocked.
- › All-terrain mode: it displays the all-terrain mode used by the vehicle.
- › **【Off-road cruise control】** : for more information, see “Off-road cruise control system” → “Off-road cruise control”.(▷ Page 141).
- › **【The Tank turning】** : for more information, see “Off-road cruise control system” → “The Tank turning”.(▷ Page 143).
- › Tyre temperature and tyre pressure: it displays the tyre temperature and tyre pressure. If the tyre temperature or tyre pressure is abnormal, the corresponding value will be displayed in red.
- › Vehicle head direction: it displays the vehicle head direction.
- › **【Pitch】** : it displays the pitch of the vehicle.
- › **【Roll】** : it displays the roll of the vehicle.
- › **【Altitude】** : it displays the altitude of the vehicle location.
- › **【Atm. pres.】** : it displays the atmospheric pressure of the vehicle location.

Conqueror perspective

After activating the conqueror perspective function, you can see the image under the engine compartment as the vehicle moves. This function can assist the driver to drive in more complicated road conditions.

After the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value, this function will be automatically deactivated.

Expert mode

For details, see “All-terrain control system” → “Expert mode”.(▷ Page 138)

Wading detection

For details, please refer to “Wading detection”.(▷ Page 147)

Wading detection

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Wading detection

Overview

When the vehicle is wading, the driver can turn on the wading detection function. The system will detect the water on the road in real time, and at the same time combine with the vehicle driving information to prompt the risks of wading.

⚠ WARNING

This function is an auxiliary tool and cannot take the place of the driver's judgement on external conditions. In any case, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time during wading. This function is not suitable for all working conditions, and there may be detection errors and inaccurate detection.

This function cannot ensure the safe driving of the vehicle under complex driving conditions such as floods, deep water, rivers, and rainstorms.

Instructions for use

On the **Application** → **【OFF ROAD mode】** interface on the multimedia display screen, touch the **【Wading detection】** button to enter the wading detection interface and enable the wading detection function.

In this interface, you can view the vehicle attitude, current wading depth, alarm prompts, working status prompts and other related information.

The driver should adjust the driving style according to the prompt information on the interface and in consideration of the driving conditions.

i NOTICE

- › When the all-terrain mode is switched to the wading mode, the wading detection function is automatically turned on.
- › When using some functions of the vehicle, the wading detection function will temporarily stop working. For example: functions related to parking assistance and off-road cruise control.

Differential lock switch

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Differential lock introduction

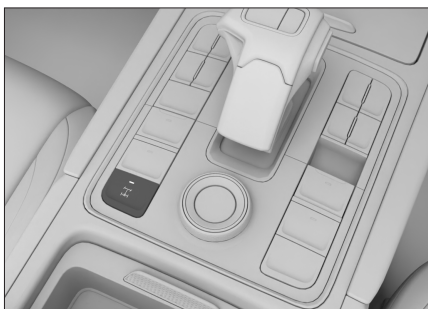
When a drive wheel slips, the differential lock will ensure that the other drive wheel is still able to get enough torque to provide an enough driving force for the vehicle to get out of trouble.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not modify the powertrain assembly and transmission system of the vehicle to avoid damage to the differential lock.
- › Do not use the differential lock on a paved road.
- › The differential lock is only used for the vehicle to get out of trouble, which shall be deactivated immediately after the vehicle is out of trouble.

- › Control the vehicle carefully after the differential lock is locked. Emergency turning is not allowed, otherwise the stability of the vehicle will be seriously affected and the risk of accidents will be increased.

Rear axle differential lock




4D9E7D8C8126

Manual locking and unlocking


i NOTICE


It can be locked normally only when the following basic conditions are met:


- › The vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h.
- › The left and right wheel speed difference is less than 50 rpm.
- › The Tank turning function is not enabled.

Start the vehicle, press the button  to lock or unlock the rear axle differential lock.

Differential lock switch

When the indicator light on this button goes on and the indicator light  on the instrument panel is displayed in green, the axle differential lock has been locked successfully.

When the indicator light on this button and the indicator light  on the instrument panel go out, the rear axle differential lock has been unlocked successfully.

When the indicator light on this button flashes for a few seconds and then goes out, and the indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes (yellow) for a few seconds and then goes out, the rear axle differential lock has failed to lock. Make sure that the conditions are met before operating.



CAUTION

When the differential lock is locked, reduce large angle turning; otherwise vehicle components may be damaged.

NOTICE

When it is difficult to unlock the vehicle, the steering wheel can be gently turned to the left and right to assist in unlocking.

Overspeed warning

When you are driving with the rear axle differential lock locked, if the indicator light  on the button flashes, and the indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes green, it indicates that the vehicle speed is too high, you need to reduce the speed.

Over speed automatic unlocking

When you are driving with the rear axle differential lock locked, if the vehicle speed is more than 40 km/h, the rear axle differential lock will be automatically unlocked.

Linkage locking and unlocking

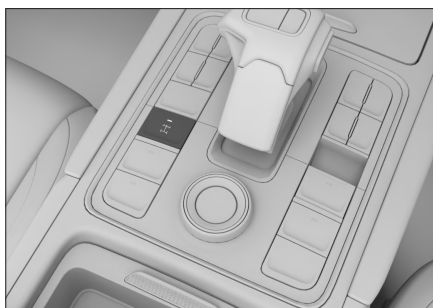
The system will control the automatic locking of the rear axle differential lock when the all-terrain mode is rock mode or 4L wading mode. When the rock mode or 4L wading mode is exited, the rear axle differential lock is automatically unlocked.

NOTICE

Over speed will not automatically unlock the differential lock after linkage locking.

Differential lock switch

Front axle differential lock





Manual locking and unlocking


i NOTICE


It can be locked normally only when the following basic conditions are met:

- › The vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h.
- › The rear axle differential lock is locked.
- › The driving mode is in 4L mode.
- › The left and right wheel speed difference is less than 50 rpm.

Press the  button to lock or unlock the front axle differential lock.

When the indicator light on this button goes on and the indicator light  on the instrument panel is displayed in green, the axle differential lock has been locked successfully.

When the indicator light on this button and the indicator light  on the instrument panel go out, the rear axle differential lock has been unlocked successfully.

When the indicator light on this button flashes for a few seconds and then goes out and the indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes (yellow) for a few seconds and then goes out, the front axle differential lock has failed to lock. Make sure that the conditions are met before operating.



i NOTICE

- › When the rear axle differential lock is unlocked, the front axle differential lock will also be unlocked simultaneously.
- › After the 4L driving mode is exited, the front axle differential lock will be automatically unlocked.
- › When it is difficult to unlock the vehicle, the steering wheel can be gently turned to the left and right to assist in unlocking.

! CAUTION

When the differential lock is locked, reduce large angle turning; otherwise vehicle components may be damaged.

Overspeed warning

When you are driving with the front axle differential lock locked, if the indicator light  on the button flashes, and the indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes green, it indicates that the vehicle speed is too high, you need to reduce the speed.

Differential lock switch

Over speed automatic unlocking

When you are driving with the front axle differential lock locked, if the vehicle speed is more than 40 km/h, the front axle differential lock will be automatically unlocked.

2

Driving

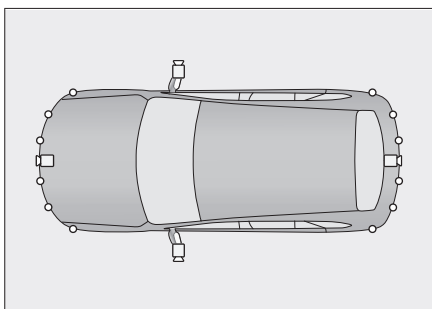
Parking assist system

Vehicle equipment



Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Parking assist system sensor

The parking assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using cameras and radars, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve the safety and comfort when parking.



F3BF476BBA5F

Illustration	Description	Position
	Cameras	On the front grille; On the tailgate; On the left and right side mirrors.
	Ultrasonic radars	On the front and rear bumpers

i NOTICE

Due to different vehicle configurations, sensor types and quantities may vary. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

! WARNING

- › The parking assist system is only an auxiliary tool, which cannot replace the driver's judgement on external conditions. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time during parking or similar operations.
- › There are blind spots to the coverage of the parking assist system, and obstacles in certain areas may not be detected. Therefore, during parking or similar operations, please make sure that there are no children or animals near the vehicle.

Parking assist system

2

Driving

CAUTION

- › When reversing, confirm that the tailgate has been fully closed.
- › Do not knock on the camera and the radar.
- › Do not flush the camera and the radar with a high-pressure water gun in the front. Otherwise, water may result in system failure or fire.
- › Do not use rough or sharp material to clean the camera and the radar. Please wipe with a soft cloth or wash with water (low water pressure) to clean the surface of the camera and the radar.

NOTICE

When the parking system is working, affected by the characteristics of radar, the following situations may cause the parking system to be less effective in recognizing or not recognizing obstacles, resulting in damage to the vehicle, including but not limited to:

- › Objects that are in the blind spot of radar detection, such as short objects, objects under bumpers, objects that are too close or too far from the vehicle.
- › Hanging objects that cannot be detected, e.g. fire boxes, vehicle spare tyre, rear of trucks.
- › There are ultrasonic noises with the same frequency around, for example, metal noise, high-pressure gas emission noise, or a car horn directed at the sensor.
- › The obstacle is a wire net, fence, thin post, rope, shopping cart, two-wheeled vehicle, or other thin object that cannot reflect effective sound waves.
- › The obstacle is snow, cotton or other substances of which the surface can easily absorb sound waves.
- › The obstacle is an object whose surface does not reflect the detection signal or a person wearing such clothing.
- › The obstacle is a cone-shaped object or an object with an inclined surface.
- › The obstacle is a right-angle object such as a corner of a wall or the rear of a vehicle.
- › The vehicle is parked on grassy or bumpy roads.
- › The license plate is bent or tilting, or a large license plate decorative frame is installed.
- › The radar is damaged, misaligned, or obscured by foreign objects (e.g. paint protective film).
- › In order to ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensor must be kept clean and free of snow and ice.

Parking assist system

i NOTICE

Cameras also have certain limitations. The following conditions may affect the normal operation of the parking system, including but not limited to:

- › The left and right side mirrors or the front and rear cameras are damaged, resulting in the cameras not working or misaligned.
- › The camera is dirty or blocked.
- › The ambient brightness is too bright, for example, the camera is exposed to direct sunlight.
- › The ambient brightness is too dark, for example, a basement without lighting or at night.
- › The ambient brightness changes greatly and is inconsistent, for example, mottled tree shadows and reflective floor paint parking spaces.
- › The parking line is not clear or the colour contrast between the parking line and the parking space is not obvious, for example, the floor tile/grass brick parking space.
- › Unconventional parking spaces, for example, trapezoidal parking spaces with inconsistent front and rear widths or curved parking spaces in parking buildings.
- › There are round or square pillars next to the parking spaces.
- › Obstacles partially intrude into or cling to the parking spaces.

- › The system may not be able to judge and exclude parking spaces with no-parking markings, cones, restricted-stop signs, ground locks, or special parking spaces.
- › The system may not be able to exclude parking spaces with obstacles, for example, bicycles, tricycles, low debris, bricks, etc.

Anti-collision radar


System description

An anti-collision radar is a radar detection device. During parking, sensors are used to detect whether there are obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle, detect the distance of obstacles, and give sound prompt to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Instructions



C4CD377814C2

- › When the power supply is in ON mode or the vehicle is started, press the  button to turn on or off the anti-collision radar.

Parking assist system

- › Switch to the R gear position and the anti-collision radar will automatically turn on.
- › Switch to the P gear position and the anti-collision radar will automatically turn off.
- › If the driving speed exceeds 15 km/h, the anti-collision radar will be automatically stopped.

Detection scope and alarm mode

Radar sensor position	Detection scope [m]
Front on both sides	0.6
Front centre	1.0
Rear on both sides	0.6
Rear centre	1.5

After the anti-collision radar is activated, if the sensor detects obstacles within the detection range, it will start to give an alarm.

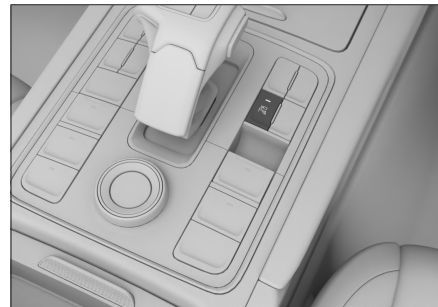
As the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle shortens, the frequency of the alarm sound will gradually increase. When the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle is within approximately 0.4 m, a long alarm will be sounded and the vehicle must not continue to run at this time in order to avoid a collision.

Around View Monitor (AVM)


System description

This system uses four cameras to capture images surrounding the vehicle and sends a video signal to the display screen for display. This helps the driver safely and easily drive to avoid accidents.

Instructions



C4CD377814C2

- › When the power supply is in ON mode or the vehicle is started, press the  button to turn on or off the Around View Monitor (AVM) function.
- › When the R gear position is engaged, the AVM will be turned on automatically.
- › When the P gear position is engaged, the AVM will be turned off automatically.
- › The AVM will be turned off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.

Parking assist system

Settings are made through **【Car】** → **【Park】** → **【Surround View deactivation】** on the multimedia display screen.

Interface introduction

On the AVM interface, the following functions can be activated or deactivated:

- › **【Intelligent parking】** : tap this button to activate the intelligent parking system.
- › **【Reverse tracking】** : tap this button to activate the reverse tracking function.
- › **【View switch】** : tap this button to switch the view modes between 2D and 3D.
- › **【Clear chassis】** : tap this button to activate or deactivate the clear chassis function.

After the clear chassis function is activated, the image interface will gradually display the image of the road under the vehicle as the vehicle moves.

- › **【Assist view】** : tap this button to switch between the assist view, wheel view, and rut view.
- › **【Smart view】** : tap this button to activate or deactivate the smart view function. When the function is turned on:

When the vehicle is in the D gear position, if the front radar detects an obstacle less than or equal to 1 m from the vehicle body, it will automatically switch to the front top image.

When the vehicle is in the R gear position, if the rear radar detects an obstacle less than or equal to 1 m from the vehicle body, it will automatically switch to the rear top image.

It will automatically switch to the previous image after the obstacle is removed.

- › **【Radar alarm】** : tap this button to activate or deactivate the radar alarm.

Automatic view switching

When the D gear position is engaged, the system will automatically switch to the front view image; when the R gear position is engaged, the system will automatically switch to the rear view image; when the D gear position is engaged, turn on the turn signal light, and the image area will automatically switch to the corresponding wheel image.

Manual view switching

When the vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h, you can switch between views manually.

When the 2D mode is turned on, you can tap surrounding area of the vehicles in the top view to switch to the single view image where the area is located.

Parking assist system

When the 3D mode is turned on, tap the top view area, then the top view will display the multi-directional buttons. Tap the button indicating each direction, and then the image area will display the view image corresponding to this button.

Intelligent parking system

System description

Based on the Around View Monitor (AVM) and the anti-collision radar system, the system uses radar sensors and cameras to detect vehicle surrounding obstacles, parking lines and other information to identify suitable parking spaces and automatically control the vehicle to complete the parking. The driver only needs to follow the system prompts.

During the parking process, if moving obstacles such as pedestrians or vehicles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically perform emergency braking; if a fixed obstacle is detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will perform comfortable braking to achieve smooth braking of the vehicle.

WARNING

The system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. During the reversing process, the driver should observe the surrounding situation and parking prompt information in real time. Emergency control or other necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

Instructions

1. After the vehicle is started, activate AVM and touch the **【Intelligent parking】** button to activate the system. Then, it searches for parking spaces based on the system's prompts.
2. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, select an appropriate parking space, and touch the button **【Start parking】**. Upon hearing the system's prompt to release the brake, the parking-in feature is activated.

NOTICE

› Before activating the intelligent parking function, make sure that the all-terrain control system is in standard, ECO or sport mode. Otherwise, the intelligent parking function is not available.

Parking assist system

- › In order to ensure the safety of parking, the driver needs to monitor the surrounding environment of the vehicle at any time, so that the vehicle can be braked in time when there is a risk of collision.
- › The parking-out function can only be used when the vehicle is static.
- › In the process of searching for parking space, make sure to keep a proper distance (about 0.5 to 1.5 m) from vehicles or obstacles on both sides. Otherwise, the system may not be able to identify the parking space.
- › After touching the button 【Start parking】 , make sure to wait for the system's prompt to release the brake before lifting your foot off the brake pedal to avoid any risk of the vehicle rolling.

Precautions

During intelligent parking process, the following operations may cause temporary interruption of parking. Intelligent parking can be resumed when the interruption disappears.

- › The vehicle doors (including the tailgate) are opened.
- › Folding the side mirrors.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › Obstacles appear on the parking track.
- › Interfering with the accelerator pedal.

During the intelligent parking, the following operations may cause automatic parking to exit.

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h in the process of searching for parking space.
- › Interfering with the gear position, the steering wheel or the parking brake.
- › There is resumable interruption time-out, excessive interruption times, excessive parking movement times, or total parking duration time-out.
- › Touching the intelligent parking button.
- › When you exit from the parking space, the system judges that there is no parking-out direction or the road is unblocked, and there is no need to use the intelligent parking function.
- › The ground slope where the vehicle stays is too large.

Parking assist system

The system is not suitable for all parking scenarios, and the expected functions may not be achieved in some special situations. The following situations are just examples and do not include all special situations:

- › The parking line cannot be clearly identified due to the influence of the surrounding environment. For example, the parking line is polluted or covered by massive garbage, weeds, mud, etc., or the surrounding light source has low illumination, and the surface of the parking space has a large reflectivity.
- › There are bumps on the surface of parking spaces, and the opposite parking line cannot be detected.
- › There are pits on the ground of the parking line.
- › The front or rear vehicle is too close to the unoccupied parking space, or occupies part of the unoccupied parking space.
- › There are pedestrians or other obstructions in the parking space.
- › Pedestrians and other obstacles stay near the camera when the vehicle is static.
- › Previous parking lines can be seen in the parking space.
- › The parking space is in a corner or on a bend.

- › Vehicle tyres are severely worn or unapproved tyres (including non-full-size spare tyres) are fitted.
- › Using this function on uneven grounds (such as weeds, gravel roads, etc.) may cause system recognition errors and unnecessary application of braking.
- › External sound sources may cause interference to the system, causing the sensor failure to identify correctly, and may falsely report obstacles that do not exist.
- › The sensor is smudged or covered.
- › There is heavy fog or rain or snow.

Cases in which the intelligent parking is disabled:

- › Tyre chains are installed.
- › Items loaded exceed the vehicle size.
- › The tow hook is installed.
- › The ground slope where the vehicle stays is too large.
- › The road surface has large pits or cavities.

Parking assist system

Reverse tracking

About the system

When the vehicle is running in D gear position at a speed no more than 30 km/h, the system will record the last 50 m route in real time. When the reverse tracking function is enabled, the system will control the steering wheel, brakes and vehicle speed so that the vehicle can automatically complete reversing in accordance with the recorded route.

In the process of reversing, if pedestrians, vehicles, and other non-fixed obstacles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically perform emergency braking.

i NOTICE

As a result of mechanical deviation, tyre pressure and other factors, there will be a certain deviation in the reversing path, so return along the original path cannot be ensured.

⚠ WARNING

The function is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. During the reversing process, the driver shall observe the surrounding situation and reversing prompt information in real time. Emergency control or other necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

Instructions

After starting the vehicle, turn on the AVM (Around View Monitor) function, and then tap the **【Reverse tracking】** button to enable the reverse tracking function.

After the function is turned on, the automatic reversing can be completed by following the prompts showed on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

- › Before turning on the reverse tracking function, make sure that the all-terrain control system is in standard, ECO or sport mode. Otherwise, the reverse tracking function is not available.
- › For parking safety, the driver needs to monitor the surrounding environment of the vehicle at any time, to brake and take over the vehicle in time when there is a collision risk.

Precautions

When the following situations occur, the system will stop and the recorded route will be cleared:

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- › The engine stalls abnormally.
- › The turning angle of the steering wheel is too large (about 450°).
- › The automatic reversing deviates from the recorded route by about 1 m.

Parking assist system

During reversing, the following conditions will cause the reverse tracking function to be interrupted or exited:

- › Tap the reverse tracking button.
- › Interfere with or operate the gear position, steering wheel or parking brake.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › Open the vehicle doors (including the tailgate).
- › Fold the side mirrors.
- › The system detects that the vehicle cannot continue driving.
- › Obstacles are detected on the driving track.

i NOTICE

After interruption and exiting due to non-system failure, turn on the reverse tracking function again, and the system can control the vehicle to complete reversing along the remaining path.

Parking settings

You can set the related functions of the parking assist through the **【Car】** → **【Park】** interface on the multimedia display screen. Refer to the actual vehicle for specific setting items.

Front obstacle 360° view activated

After the function is enabled, if the moving speed is less than 10 km/h and there is an obstacle detected within the detection range, the front radar and AVM system will be started automatically. If the vehicle stops approaching the obstacle within a certain period of time or the vehicle is away from the obstacle or the vehicle applies the parking brake, the system will automatically shut down.

Steering panoramic view activated


After the function is enabled, set to the D gear position and turn on the turn signal light or turn the steering wheel to a certain angle, and then the AVM will be automatically turned on. When the steering wheel is restored or the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value, the AVM will be automatically turned off.

Exit panoramic view while driving

The AVM will be turned off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.

Parking assist system

Low speed emergency braking

After the function is enabled, when the vehicle is reversing at a low speed, the low speed emergency braking indicator light  on the AVM interface will be illuminated in green, which indicates that the function is normally activated. If an obstacle is detected during low speed driving and a collision risk is determined, the system will automatically apply emergency braking to reduce the risk of a collision. At this moment, the indicator light turns red.

CAUTION

- › The function is only an auxiliary one, which cannot guarantee that all obstacles are detected under all conditions.
- › Under complex road conditions (such as off-road conditions or narrow passages), please turn off the low-speed emergency braking function. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- › Please turn off the low-speed emergency braking function after the vehicle is equipped with traction devices or when the vehicle is towing other vehicles. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.

Enable panoramic view

Tap this button to activate the Around View Monitor (AVM) function.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre pressure monitoring system introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tyre pressure and temperature in real time and alerts the driver to take appropriate actions to avoid an accident when an abnormality occurs in the tyre.

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

CAUTION

- › Using the tyre repair methods such as tyre sealant (except for the tyre sealant provided by authorised service centre), carburettor cleaning agent, and inflator may damage the tyre pressure sensor and cause the TPMS to fail to work normally.

- › If the replaced tyre is a non-pure spare part, the TPMS may not work properly.
- › The tyre pressure sensor is installed near the tyre internal valve. When repairing or replacing the tyre, please contact the authorised service centre for handling to avoid incorrect operation damaging the tyre pressure sensor and causing the TPMS to fail to work normally.
- › TPMS may not work properly when the tyre chain is installed or the wheel is covered.
- › TPMS may not work properly due to radio interference.

NOTICE

- › TPMS cannot be a substitute for regular tyre maintenance. Check the tyre frequently to ensure proper tyre pressure, even if no alarm is received from TPMS.
- › Tyre pressure can be affected by factors such as the heat generated from vehicle operations, the external environment, journey time, etc. Generally, tyre pressure has a fluctuation of 30 kPa approximately, which is normal.
- › TPMS is unable to monitor the spare tyre pressure.

Tyre pressure monitoring system


Self-learning function

Data update can be automatically completed through self-learning function after tyre replacement or tyre rotation.

After stopping the vehicle for more than 16 minutes, the system will automatically complete tyre pressure learning and positioning by starting the vehicle and driving at a speed higher than 30 km/h for about 9 minutes.

If self-learning fails, please contact the authorised service centre as soon as possible and reset the TPMS.

Tyre pressure monitoring and alert

Press the homepage button  on the steering wheel to switch the instrument panel to the driving data interface. On the driving data interface, flip the adjustment button up and down to switch to the tyre pressure monitoring interface, and you can view the pressure and temperature information of the four tyres in use in real time.




0966B9BFC589

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the instrument panel will provide following warning:

- › The warning interface will be displayed on information centre. The abnormal tyre icon becomes yellow and an audible alert is given.

NOTICE

Due to different software versions, the abnormal tyre alarm of some models may be red. Refer to the actual vehicle.

- › The tyre pressure monitoring system warning light  on the instrument panel goes on.

If there is a tyre alarm message during driving, avoid sharp turns and emergency braking. Reduce your speed, drive to a safe location and park your vehicle as soon as possible. Then contact the authorised service centre for maintenance.

Fatigue driving reminder system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction of fatigue driving reminder

The fatigue driving reminder system identifies the driver's fatigue level by continuously detecting the driver's operation of the vehicle. If the system recognizes that driver is fatigue, sound and visual alarms will be given to alert the driver to drive with care.

WARNING

- › Fatigue driving is strictly prohibited. Reasonable parking intervals should always be arranged for long-distance driving to ensure adequate rest.
- › It is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that he/she is in a good driving condition.

- › Fatigue driving warning function is only an auxiliary tool and may not be able to actually monitor driver fatigue. In some cases, the system may judge normal driving behavior as fatigue.

Fatigue driving reminder instructions

You can turn on or off the fatigue driving reminder function through the **【Car】** → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Fatigue warning

When the system detects the following conditions, the instrument panel will display the "Please take a break" warning screen, accompanied by an audible alarm.

- › When the driver fasten the seat belt and the speed exceeds 65 km/h, the system detects that the driver is driving in a fatigued state.
- › The vehicle has been driven (after starting) for 4 consecutive hours.

WARNING

- › This feature cannot be used to loosen driving restrictions. Regular stops must be arranged during the long driving for adequate rest.

Fatigue driving reminder system

2

Driving

› In some situations, the driver's abilities may be unaffected even though he/she is fatigued. In such circumstances, the system will not issue a warning. For this reason, when the driver shows signs of fatigue, regardless of whether the system issues a warning, it is necessary to stop and rest properly.

NOTICE

If the vehicle speed is lower than 65 km/h, the system will not issue a warning even if the driver shows signs of fatigue.

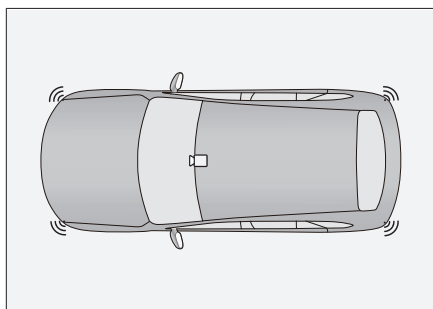
Intelligent driving assist system

Vehicle equipment



Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Intelligent driving assist system sensor

The intelligent driving assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using a camera and radar sensor, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve safety and comfort while the vehicle is travelling.



AAAE965BF6C2

Illustration	Description	Position
	Camera	Near the base of the inside rear-view mirror
	Millimetre wave radar	Inside the front and rear bumpers

i NOTICE

Due to different vehicle configurations, sensor types and quantities may vary. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- › The intelligent driving assist system is intended as a supplementary system and is not designed to replace the driver's own assessment of the traffic conditions or to take control of the vehicle. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › When the vehicle has towing equipment installed or is towing another vehicle, intelligent driving assist system can not work properly, so the function related to the intelligent driving should be turned off.

Intelligent driving assist system

About the camera

The camera is used to identify lane markings, traffic signs, targets around vehicle, etc., providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

⚠ WARNING

- › It is strictly prohibited to disassemble or modify the camera without permission.
- › When the camera does not work properly, the function of relying on the camera to provide lane marking, traffic sign and target information will be limited.
- › The camera has a limited detection scope and cannot detect the targets outside the limit scope.
- › When the camera fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

⚠ WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the camera, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Poor lighting conditions at night;
- › Weather conditions (such as rain, snow and fog) with poor visibility;

- › A situation in which a vehicle wobbles due to an undulating or uneven road;
- › A situation where the ambient light changes sharply;
- › A situation that a strong light shines the camera;
- › Deformed or damaged windscreen, causing the incorrect camera installation position and angle;
- › Complex intersections;
- › Too high or too low ambient temperature;
- › A situation that the camera is covered with a foreign object;
- › Short following distance and blocked camera;
- › A situation where a guardrail, an elevated road or a tree casts a shadow on a road;
- › Poor tunnel light;
- › A situation of passing through narrow bends and sharp turns;
- › Unclear lane markings.

i NOTICE

When the instrument indicates that the system sensor detection is restricted, check and ensure the camera and its surroundings are clean and free of obstructions so that the system can operate properly.

Intelligent driving assist system

About the millimetre wave radar

The millimetre wave radar is used to detect the targets around the vehicle, providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

WARNING

- › It is strictly prohibited to paint and modify the bumper without permission to avoid the limited detection performance of the millimetre wave radar.
- › When the millimetre wave radar cannot work normally, the function relying on the millimetre wave radar to provide detection information will be limited.
- › The millimetre wave radar has a limited detection scope and cannot detect the targets outside the limit scope.
- › When the millimetre wave radar fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the millimetre wave radar, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Severe weather (e.g. fog, haze, rain, snow and dust storm);

- › Foreign objects such as ice, snow, water, and dust attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, or bumper;
- › Misaligned or blocked millimetre wave radar;
- › The impact to the area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper due to the collision of vehicles, scratches and other accidents;
- › Too small volume of the detected object;
- › Interference by electromagnetic wave of the same frequency;
- › The millimetre wave radar temperature is out of the working range due to the vehicle being in a high temperature or extremely cold environment.

NOTICE

The area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper must be kept clean and free from foreign objects such as ice, snow and dust to ensure the normal operation of the millimetre wave radar.

When you find a foreign object attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water.

- › Do not use the high-pressure water gun to flush the millimetre wave radar.
- › Do not use sharp or abrasive objects for cleaning.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › Do not use chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners.


i NOTICE

- › This communication device conforms to standards or technical requirements of NBTC.
- › The electromagnetic field intensity of this communication device conforms to *Safety Standard for People to Use Communication Device Healthily* published by National Telecommunications Commission.

Intelligent driving instructions



6DEF319365E3

After starting the vehicle, press the  button to bring up the intelligent driving setting interface.

You can enter the intelligent driving setting interface through the **【Car】** → **【Smart drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Forward assist

You can set the function related to the forward assist through the **【Car】** → **【Smart drive】** → **【Forward assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The forward assist system identifies vehicles on the lane through a camera mounted on the front windscreen and radars located on both sides of the front bumper. Upon detecting a collision risk ahead, the system will either sound an alarm or take corrective measures to mitigate the risk of collision.

⚠ WARNING

We cannot guarantee that this system will function as expected in all situations. Driving the vehicle towards pedestrians, animals or other vehicles for the purpose of testing the system is strictly prohibited. Failure to comply may result in serious injuries or death.

i NOTICE

- › In complex driving conditions, the system may apply unnecessary braking. This may happen, for example, in construction sites, at railway tracks, and when water is sprayed or splashed in front of the vehicle.
- › This system may not work or may not work properly in low-visibility situations (such as rain, snow or fog, and at night).

Intelligent driving assist system

- › When you are driving or washing your car in a harsh environment, the sensor may be blocked by water or debris, causing the system to fail to work normally. Please clean the sensor and its surrounding areas in time.
- › Due to different configurations, some models are not equipped with a radar, but the system functions normally.

Auto emergency braking (AEB)

The auto emergency braking system includes forward collision warning system and brake assist function.

For driving forwards, this function will detect the risk of collision between your vehicle and pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles (most stationary vehicles or the vehicles driving in the same direction in the same lane as your vehicle) ahead in a limited range, and actively send visual warnings and audible alarms, as well as try to actively brake to reduce driving speed, minimizing the impact of forward collisions and improving the safety performance of driving vehicles.

- › Off: all auto emergency braking functions are deactivated.
- › Braking: the auto emergency braking function is activated.

Front collision warning

When the vehicle speed is within the system working range, the system will give visual warnings, and audible alarms to remind the driver to take safe driving measures in time if it detects a pedestrian or vehicle and determines that there is a risk of a collision.

Alert messages include:

- › Images and texts on the instrument panel.
- › Audible alarms.
- › Sudden braking.

Brake assist

When the vehicle speed is within the system working range, the system will control the vehicle to automatically perform emergency braking to avoid collisions to the greatest extent if it detects that there is a collision risk with a pedestrian or a vehicle and that the driver does not take safe driving measures within a limited range. However, if a collision is inevitable, the system will minimize the vehicle speed to avoid collisions, and will send out images and audible alarms to alert the driver. Meanwhile, the hazard warning lights flash quickly to remind the rear vehicles, lowering the risk of rear-end collision by the rear vehicles.

Intelligent driving assist system

Brake assist can also address the potential risks to a certain extent when the vehicle is turning at a crossroad. With your vehicle speed within the system working range when the vehicle is making a turn at a road junction, the system will control the vehicle to automatically perform braking to avoid collisions to the greatest extent if it detects that there is a collision risk with a pedestrian or a vehicle in the opposite direction within a limited range. The vehicle will send images and audible alarms to remind the driver. Meanwhile, the hazard warning lights flash quickly to remind the rear vehicles, lowering the risk of rear-end collision by the rear vehicles. The system is able to detect pedestrians and vehicles (passenger cars, lorries, buses etc.) moving in the opposite direction to your vehicle.

When the system is working, the following alarm messages will be issued:

- › Images and texts on the instrument panel.
- › Audible alarms.

WARNING

- › The working range of the auto emergency braking system is about 10 to 150 km/h.

- › The auto emergency braking system is an emergency collision assist function. For safety reasons, drivers are strictly prohibited from consciously driving to pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles to test the auto emergency braking function.
- › The auto emergency braking system is an emergency collision assist function, which is not designed to completely prevent collisions. The system only minimises the impact of a forward collision by trying to reduce the driving speed within a limited range when the vehicle is at risk of an emergency collision. Please do not rely excessively on the auto emergency braking system to avoid serious personal injury and property damage.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › The auto emergency braking system is limited by several factors and cannot be a substitute for the driver's accurate braking. Meanwhile, the system cannot meet the requirements of accurate functions in all driving states, environments, weather, and road conditions. The system may cause the vehicle to perform unnecessary alarms and braking or omit alarms and brakes. It is necessary to always focus all attention when driving and prepare to take braking and/or turning measures to avoid collisions. Do not rely solely on the auto emergency braking system to avoid collisions or reduce the impact of collisions.
- › The auto emergency braking system cannot be a substitute for maintaining the safe driving distance between your vehicle and a pedestrian, cyclist, and vehicle in front. Please avoid driving too close to the above targets or having radical driving behaviour.
- › When the auto emergency braking system is deactivated, the vehicle will not warn or perform braking even if it detects potential hazards. It is recommended that you do not deactivate this function. This function will restart after the vehicle is powered on again.

WARNING

The conditions below may cause the auto emergency braking system to fail to brake, interrupt braking, or reduce braking capacity, including but not limited to the following:

- › The R gear position is engaged.
- › The electronic stability control (ESC) system is not activated or is limited.
- › The brake function cannot fully work (supercooled, overheated and wet brake parts, improper vehicle maintenance, excessive brake or tyre wear, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.).
- › The sensor detection is limited or malfunctioning (e. g., sensor sheltered, and surface dirty).
- › The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- › The front doors are not closed.
- › The driver has been already braking.
- › The driver depresses hard or urgently on the accelerator pedal.
- › The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.
- › The driver turns on the indicators incorrectly in the case of the failure to comply with the traffic regulations when turning at a crossroad.
- › The auto emergency braking cannot be triggered again within about 20 seconds after triggering.
- › No vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians are detected ahead.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › The vehicle is driving on snow-covered, slippery, gravel or desert roads.

WARNING

- › The auto emergency braking system may not completely bring the speed to a standstill when it is activated. Please be prepared to take over the control of the vehicle at any time if the system interrupts braking.
- › If the driver depresses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal or intervenes by steering during emergency braking, the system will exit emergency braking function. The driver should be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.
- › During the auto emergency braking, the brake pedal will automatically and quickly go down. Please do not place your foot under the brake pedal to prevent injury, or put anything under the brake pedal to affect braking.
- › When the auto emergency braking system is activated, if the vehicle speed is low, the system will be able to reduce the speed until it comes to a complete stop so as to avoid a potential collision, but it will not keep the vehicle stationary continuously. Now the driver should actively apply the brakes. If the vehicle is stationary, the system will activate the electronic parking brake to stabilize the vehicle when it stops. If you want to continue driving, release the electronic parking brake, or depress the accelerator pedal hard or actively turn the steering wheel.
- › The warning function of the auto emergency braking system is for the driver's reference only and cannot be a substitute for the driver's own attention and judgement. When the system sends out visual texts, pictures, and sounds, please take immediate collision avoidance measures to remove potential risks. Do not rely on the auto emergency braking system to intervene in braking the vehicle.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

- › The auto emergency braking system only assists you in safe driving. If the system is affected by several factors, please keep yourself focused, abide by the current traffic laws and regulations, and drive safely. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for safe driving.

WARNING

The operations below may cause the auto emergency braking system to fail to give an alarm or interrupt an alarm, including but not limited to the following:

- › The auto emergency braking system may not sound an alarm when the driver has been already braking.
- › The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm or interrupt an alarm when the driver steps on the accelerator pedal deeply or sharply.
- › The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm or interrupt an alarm when the driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

WARNING

The auto emergency braking system function may be limited, and the targets that make the auto emergency braking system limited or inoperative, include but are not limited to:

- › Oncoming vehicles and motorcycles.

- › Crossing vehicles and motorcycles.
- › Vehicles and motorcycles parked horizontally, obliquely and opposite.
- › Special-shaped vehicles (tractors, mud trucks, etc.).
- › Unconventional small wheeled vehicles (strollers, suitcases, shopping carts, wheelchairs, etc.).
- › Unusual means of transportation (carriages, ox carts, etc.).
- › Traffic lights, warning signs, and roadblocks (cone barrels, etc.).
- › Trash bins, cartons, and parcels.
- › Walls, stones, and road edges.
- › Flying or falling objects.
- › Animals.
- › Other non-vehicle objects.

WARNING

The associated camera that the auto emergency braking system relies on has limited detection capability, which may result in unnecessary or missing warning and braking, including but not limited to the followings:

- › The system may not recognize stationary targets at high vehicle speeds.
- › A vehicle (especially a bus, truck, etc.) closely cuts in front of your vehicle.
- › The targets are partially blocked by obstacles, pedestrians, vehicles or other objects, etc.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › A vehicle is driving on a slippery, cornering and hillside road.
- › The vehicles with trailers, tractors, mud trucks, and special-shaped vehicles appear in front.
- › The front windscreen area within the camera's field of view is blocked by dirt, tags, etc.
- › The visibility is limited by weather conditions (fog, haze, rain, snow, dust storm weather, etc.)
- › A vehicle is driving in a dark surrounding area (at dawn or dusk, at night, driving in a tunnel, etc.)
- › The detected target colour is almost the same as the surrounding environment colour.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › There are sudden changes in ambient brightness (strong light, back-lighting, etc., when entering and exiting the entrance and exit of the tunnel).
- › Camera detection capabilities are limited.

WARNING

The above warnings, reminders and restrictions do not cover all the conditions that may affect the normal working of the auto emergency braking system. More factors can interfere with the auto emergency braking system. Drivers need to concentrate on staying focused, constantly pay attention to the traffic environment, always be ready to take collision avoidance measures and drive safely. Do not rely solely on the auto emergency braking system to avoid collisions or reduce the impact of collisions.

Front collision warning sensitivity

- › Low: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is close to pedestrians or vehicles ahead.
- › Standard: the system will give an alarm reminder when the distance between your vehicle and pedestrians or vehicles ahead is set to the normal value by the system.
- › High: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is far from pedestrians or vehicles ahead.

Intelligent driving assist system

Front cross traffic alert/braking

When the vehicle starts off to move from a road junction and goes straight (e.g., at a traffic light), the system will respond with an alarm or by braking if it detects a vehicle coming from the right or left and determines that there is a risk of a collision.

Front cross traffic alert (FCTA): the vehicle starts off at a speed of 0 to 10 km/h. The vehicle will issue an alarm if a collision risk is detected.

Front cross traffic braking (FCTB): the vehicle starts off at a speed of 0 to 5 km/h. The vehicle will brake if a collision risk is detected.

The system is able to detect vehicles (e.g. passenger cars, lorries and buses) moving in a transverse direction to your vehicle at 10 to 60 km/h. When the light is dark, the detection range will be affected, so please turn on the headlights when driving at night.

Smart cornering

You can activate or deactivate the smart cornering function.

When the smart cornering switch on the multimedia display screen is turned on, with the cruise control assist activated, the intelligent turning function will reduce the vehicle speed appropriately if the vehicle is approaching a curve at a too high speed.

⚠ WARNING

- › When you enter and exit a curve or driving in a curve, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead at the same lane in time. This could cause late braking. The driver must be alert and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.
- › During driving through a curve, the system may mistakenly detect vehicles in other lanes, causing unnecessary braking.
- › For driving on a road with sharp turns (such as switchbacks), if the vehicle ahead moves out of the detection range of the sensor, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly. The driver must be alert and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.

Rear side assist

You can set the functions related to rear side assist through the **【Car】** → **【Smart drive】** → **【Rear side assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The rear side assist system can detect vehicles behind your vehicle or in the adjacent lane through sensors on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a risk of collision, the system will issue an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

i NOTICE

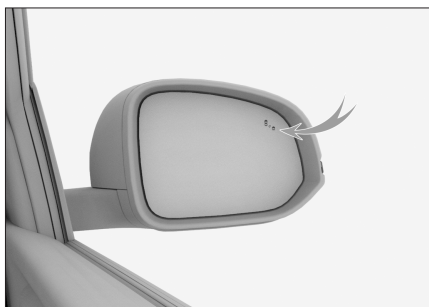
- › Keep both sides of the rear bumper clean, do not paste any objects, and ensure that no foreign objects such as ice, snow, mud, etc. may cover the sensors, so as not to affect the normal work of the sensors.
- › Improper repair or modification may cause sensor misalignment, which may affect the normal operation of the system. Therefore, it is recommended that you maintain and repair your vehicle at the authorised service centre.
- › Deactivate the rear side assist system when towing other vehicles.

! WARNING

In some cases, it may not work properly or even not work. For example:

- › For stationary targets (vehicles, pedestrians, etc.).
- › Driving in adverse conditions such as rain, and snow.
- › Driving on sharp turns, slopes, very wide or narrow lanes.

Warning lights



The warning lights are located on the surfaces of the left and right side mirrors.

i NOTICE

Do not paste any objects on the warning lights to avoid affecting the system warning function.

Lane change assist

During driving (with the vehicle speed above 12 km/h), when the system detects a vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors or a fast approaching vehicle in the rear of the adjacent lane, the warning light on the corresponding side will go on. If you turn on the indicators at the same side at this time, the warning light will flash and an audible alarm will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue changing the lane.

Intelligent driving assist system

Door open warning

The system detects that there are approaching vehicles, bicycles and other targets in the adjacent lanes on both sides after the vehicle stops. If there is a risk of collision when the door is opened, the warning light on the corresponding side will go on. If you continue to open the door at this time, the warning light will flash with an audible alarm, prompting you that it is dangerous to continue to open the door.

i NOTICE

The door open warning system will only function in the following conditions:

- › The power supply is in the ON mode.
- › It is within 3 minutes after the power supply mode is switched from ON to OFF.

i NOTICE

When the power saving delay function setting value is less than 3 minutes, it will be executed according to the power saving delay setting.

Rear collision warning

When the system detects that there is a fast approaching vehicle behind the subject vehicle and there is a risk of collision, the left and right indicators will flash quickly, accompanied by an audible alarm and instrument panel prompts to remind the driver that a dangerous target is approaching, and warning the driver of rear vehicle to drive safely.

Rear cross traffic alert/braking

When the rear cross traffic alert function is enabled, if during reversing the system detects that there is a risk of collision with a moving vehicle in the blind area of the side mirror, it will give an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

When the rear cross traffic braking function is activated, limited braking can be applied when there is a risk in reversing, reducing the risk of collision.

i NOTICE

The rear cross traffic assist function is limited in some cases. For example:

- › There are obstacles blocking.
The system cannot detect the objects behind other parked vehicles or obstacles.
- › The current vehicle speed is too high or too low.
- › The driver depresses the accelerator pedal firmly.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

Lane assist

You can set the lane assist function through the **【Car】** → **【Smart drive】** → **【Lane assist】** interface on the multi-media display screen.

The lane assist system is designed for vehicles when driving on motorways and other roads with good conditions. The camera on the front windscreen recognises the lane boundary, which can remind the driver to correct the route when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane. Some functions even assist the driver to correct the direction to reduce the risk of collision.

⚠ CAUTION

This system can only work normally when the lane boundary is clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › Lane markings are unclear, non-standard, or otherwise obscured.
- › There are objects on the road that affect the identification of lane boundaries (water, cracks, ruts, signs, crosswalks, bumps or pits, etc.).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or separate.

- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn, a narrow road, or a road prone to rollover.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

i NOTICE

- › If you turn on the turn indicator, turn the steering wheel, and depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal before passing through a lane boundary, the system will not send an alarm. In this case, the system considers you attempt to drive the vehicle.
- › When the driver controls the steering wheel with a small force, the system may not detect the driver's hand holding the steering wheel, and the instrument panel will send an alarm message.

Lane assist function

When the lane assist function is turned on, the assist modes can be selected.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › Lane deviation warning: the system can warn the driver to drive safely when the driver is unaware of lane deviation.
- › Lane keep assist: the system can assist the driver to correct the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in the lane when the driver deviates from the lane unconsciously. If the correction fails, the system will give an alarm to alert the driver to drive safely.

i NOTICE

The lane assist function can only work when the vehicle speed is within 60 to 150 km/h.

After the lane assist function is turned on, the lane boundary on the instrument panel has the following situations:

- › Not shown: it indicates that the system has not detected any lane boundary.
- › Grey: it indicates that the system has detected a lane boundary.
- › Green: it indicates that the system is correcting the steering wheel.
- › Red and flashing: it indicates that the system sounds an alarm, and the driver needs to correct the direction in time to make the vehicle return to the lane.

Emergency lane keep assist

When the function is turned on, the system will more actively correct the steering wheel in case of an emergency to reduce the risk of collision. For example:

- › There is a risk of collision with vehicles in adjacent lanes when the vehicle is deviating from lanes or changing lanes.
- › When the vehicle is deviating from the lane or changing lanes, the outside of the lane is the shoulder.

i NOTICE

The emergency lane keep assist function can only work when the vehicle speed is within 60 to 150 km/h.

! WARNING

In some cases, the emergency lane keep assist function may not work properly or not work. For example:

- › For smaller targets (motorcycles, bicycles, etc.)
- › For stationary targets.
- › The current vehicle is moving too close to the preceding vehicle and prevents the camera from detecting it.
- › The rear vehicle is driving too close to the current vehicle and prevents the sensor from detecting it.

Intelligent driving assist system

Smart dodge

After the smart dodge function is turned on, if the intelligent cruise control assist function is activated and in working condition, when the system identifies that the vehicle is about to overtake the adjacent large vehicle (wagon, truck, bus, etc.), it will control the vehicle to move slightly away from the large vehicle. After overtaking the large vehicle, your vehicle will return to the central area of the current lane.

NOTICE

The smart dodge function will not begin to work until the vehicle speed reaches 60 to 140 km/h.

CAUTION

The following situations may not trigger the smart dodge function:

- › The system detects that there is a large vehicle on the adjacent lane on one side, and there are vehicles on the adjacent lane on the other side or the adjacent lane on the other side is a curb.
- › The vehicle is driving in severe weather such as night, heavy fog, rain and snow.
- › The vehicle is in a curve.

Warning mode

There are three warning modes: sound, vibration and vibration + sound.

Warning sensitivity

Sensitivity is divided into three levels: low, standard and high.

Traffic signs

You can set the functions related to traffic signs through the **【Car】** → **【Smart drive】** → **【Traffic signs】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

This function recognises traffic signs through the camera on the front windscreen and displays them on the instrument panel to assist the driver in driving.

Traffic signs recognition

After the function is activated, the traffic signs can be recognised and displayed on the instrument panel to assist the driver in driving.

Cruising speed limit

After the traffic sign recognition function is enabled, the cruising speed limit function can be enabled.

When the vehicle is running in a cruise control mode, if the system recognises a speed limit sign of ≥ 30 km/h and the cruising speed is higher than the speed limit of the sign, the system will remind the driver to reduce the vehicle speed to be within the allowable maximum speed limit.

Overspeed warning

After the traffic sign recognition function is activated, the overspeed alarm function can be enabled. After the speed limit sign is recognised, in case of overspeeding, the system will give an alarm to remind the driver to reduce the speed to a suitable range as soon as possible.

Overspeed warning sensitivity

The warning timing for overspeed can be set according to your driving habits.

- › 0: a warning will be given when the vehicle speed reaches the speed limit.
- › > 0: a warning will be given only when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit.
- › < 0: a warning will be given in advance when the vehicle speed does not reach the speed limit.

WARNING

The traffic assist function is designed to alert the driver to note traffic signs and is not intended to be used in all cases and is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road speed limit messages.

In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

CAUTION

The traffic assist function can work properly only when the speed sign is clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › A sign fades.
- › A sign is on a curve.
- › A sign is not properly positioned.
- › A sign is rotating or is damaged.
- › A sign is fully or partially blocked.
- › A sign is fully or partially covered by frost, snow, dust, etc.
- › A speed sign is placed in the position that is too far or too high.
- › A speed limit reminder or sign is attached to the road surface.
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

NOTICE

- › The unit for speed limit signs that the system identifies will be consistent with the speed unit of the instrument panel.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › For multiple speed limit values on the same speed limit sign, the system will show the maximum value.
- › When multiple speed limit signs are arranged in parallel, the system will display the maximum speed limit value. Take the actual speed limit value of the current lane as the criterion.
- › The system may not be able to recognise a speed limit sign when the vehicle is turning.

Adaptive cruise control system

For driving on a straight motorway where traffic is flowing well, the adaptive cruise control system keeps the vehicle at a set speed without the driver having to depress the accelerator pedal. When the system detects that the vehicle in front of you is moving at a speed less than the cruising speed set by your vehicle, the vehicle will travel by following the preceding vehicle at a set safe distance.

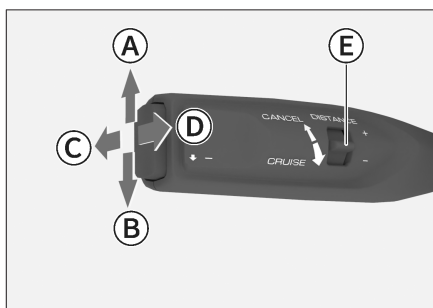
⚠ WARNING

- › Adaptive cruise control system is intended as a supplementary system and is not designed to replace the driver's own assessment of the traffic conditions or to take control of the vehicle. Under any circumstances, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › Improper use of the adaptive cruise control system may result in a collision.
- › Only use the adaptive cruise control system in good weather when the traffic is flowing well.
- › The adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use in conditions such as urban areas, winding roads, narrow roads, wet and slippery roads, heavy rain or other harsh weather conditions.
- › When you drive on a slope, the adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use, based on the following points:
The system cannot maintain a set speed while the vehicle is travelling uphill or downhill.

Intelligent driving assist system

When the vehicle ahead passes the top or bottom of the slope, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect the vehicle ahead, causing sudden acceleration or late braking.


- › When your vehicle is towing other vehicles, the adaptive cruise control system cannot work normally. In this case, do not use the adaptive cruise control system.



39EA3B4CE66F

- Ⓐ Acceleration (+)
- Ⓑ Deceleration (-)
- Ⓒ Cancel cruise control (CANCEL)
- Ⓓ Activate cruise control (CRUISE)
- Ⓔ Distance level adjustment (DISTANCE)


Activating cruise control

1. During driving, if the adaptive cruise control activation conditions are met, the adaptive cruise control indicator light  on the instrument cluster will light up in white.

i NOTICE

Conditions for activation:

- › The driver door is closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › The vehicle is started and the D gear position is engaged.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.
- › The vehicle driving mode is in the standard, ECO or sport mode.

2. Move the control lever in the direction towards the steering wheel to the **【CRUISE】** position and release it. The adaptive cruise control function is turned on, and the adaptive cruise control indicator light  on the instrument cluster will light up in green.

i NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruising speed.

⚠ CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the adaptive cruise control system is 30 km/h. When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the system sets the vehicle speed to 30 km/h; when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, the system will activate the cruise control function at the current speed.

Intelligent driving assist system

Adjusting cruising speed

Toggle the control lever to the **【+】** or **【-】** position and then release it, to slightly increase or decrease the cruising speed.

Toggle the control lever to the **【+】** or **【-】** position and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the cruising speed. When the desired speed is reached, release the control lever.

i NOTICE

Only when the road ahead is unjammed will the vehicle be accelerated to the set speed. Otherwise, your vehicle will follow the front vehicle at the set distance level.

Adjusting distance level

Toggle the **【DISTANCE】** adjustment knob to adjust the following distance with the vehicle in front.

The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the speed of the vehicle.

i NOTICE

- › Setting a low distance level may result in a delay in reaction in the event of unexpected situations, and it is always your responsibility to adjust the distance level appropriately.

- › A larger distance level shall be chosen for driving on wet and slippery roads in comparison with driving on dry roads.

Cancelling cruise control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

- › Step on the brake pedal.
- › Move the control lever away from the steering wheel to the **【CANCEL】** position and release it.

Recovering cruising speed

During driving, move the control lever in the direction towards the steering wheel to the **【CRUISE】** position for a few seconds and then release it. The system uses the last cruising speed as the current cruising speed.

i NOTICE

The cruise control function will be automatically exited in the following situations:

- › Depress the accelerator pedal to make the vehicle accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock brake system (ABS) is activated.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › The ESP is activated/deactivated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disk is overheated.
- › The vehicle is turned off.
- › The vehicle driving mode is not in standard, ECO or sport mode.

Following start function

This function allows your vehicle to follow another vehicle at 0 to 150 km/h.

In the event of traffic congestion, slow down the vehicle to a stop by following the preceding vehicle. In this case:

- › If the preceding vehicle leaves within 3 s, your vehicle will automatically follow it.
- › If the preceding vehicle stops for a long time (3 s to 3 min), lightly step on the accelerator pedal to restart the system.
- › If the preceding vehicle is parked for more than 3 minutes, your vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.
- › If the driver opens the door or releases the seat belt, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

i NOTICE

Cancelling cruise control function will automatically turn off the following start function.

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take the braking measures:

- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.
- › There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speed.
- › An oncoming vehicle is running in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › A pedestrian, animal, roadblock, cone barrel, trailer, special-shaped vehicle or small vehicle (such as a bicycle or a motorcycle) appears.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.
- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The followed vehicle has a relatively small tail dimension or very large ground clearance.
- › The steering wheel operation is unstable or your position in the lane is unstable.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.

Intelligent driving assist system

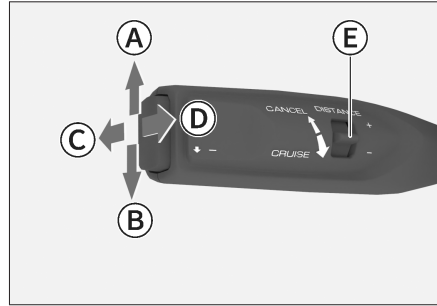
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Intelligent cruise control system

The intelligent cruise control system is based on the adaptive cruise control system. When the sensor detects the lane markings, it can assist the driver to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane and help the driver control the vehicle safely and easily.

⚠ WARNING


This system cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Under poor light conditions (e.g. at night and on cloudy days), rapid changes in light (e.g. in and out of tunnels), large-scale shadows on the ground (objects and landscape features projected on the road surface), and other circumstances, the recognition capability of the sensor will be limited, so the system cannot replace the driver's judgement of road conditions. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.



39EA3B4CE66F

- (A) Acceleration (+)
- (B) Deceleration (-)
- (C) Cancel cruise control (CANCEL)
- (D) Activate cruise control (CRUISE)
- (E) Distance level adjustment (DISTANCE)

Activating the cruise control

1. During driving, if the intelligent cruise control activation conditions are met, the intelligent cruise control indicator light (white)  on the instrument cluster will be on.


i NOTICE

Conditions for activation:

- › The driver side door is closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › The vehicle is started and the D gear position is engaged.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › The system detects the lane boundary, or a moving vehicle ahead when the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- › The vehicle driving mode is in the standard, ECO or sport mode.

2. Move the control lever twice consecutively in the direction towards the steering wheel to the **【CRUISE】** position and release it. The intelligent cruise control function is turned on, and the intelligent cruise control indicator light  on the instrument cluster changes from white to green.

CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the intelligent cruise control system is 30 km/h. When the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the system sets the vehicle speed to 30 km/h; when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, the system will activate the cruise control function at the current speed.

Adjusting the cruising speed

Toggle the control lever to the **【+】** or **【-】** position and then release it, to slightly increase or decrease the cruising speed.

Toggle the control lever to the **【+】** or **【-】** position and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the cruising speed. When the desired speed is reached, release the control lever.

NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the front vehicle at the set distance level.

Adjusting the distance level

Toggle the **【DISTANCE】** adjustment knob to adjust the following distance with the vehicle in front.

The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the speed of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- › Setting up a low distance level may result in a delay in reaction in the event of unexpected situations, and it is always your responsibility to adjust the distance level appropriately.
- › Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

- › Step on the brake pedal.
- › Move the control lever away from the steering wheel to the **【CANCEL】** position and release it.

Intelligent driving assist system

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle will not be controlled by cruise control system after the intelligent cruise control function is canceled. The driver should take over control of the steering wheel, the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal immediately to avoid danger.

- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › The electronic stability control (ESC) is activated/deactivated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disk is overheated.
- › The vehicle is shut down.
- › The vehicle driving mode is not in standard, ECO or sport mode.

Recovering the cruising speed

During driving, move the control lever in the direction towards the steering wheel to the **【CRUISE】** position for a few seconds and then release it. The system uses the last cruising speed as the current cruising speed. At this time, move the control lever twice consecutively in the direction towards the steering wheel to the **【CRUISE】** position and release it, to activate the intelligent cruise control system.

i NOTICE

The cruise control function will automatically exit in the following situations:

- › The accelerator pedal is depressed to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver's seat belt is released.
- › The driver side door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock brake system is activated.

⚠ CAUTION

Intelligent cruise control function may not work or may not work properly in certain situations. For example:

- › With the cruising speed above 60 km/h (including 60 km/h), there are no lane markings, or the lane markings on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.
- › With the cruising speed below 60 km/h, there are no lane markings, or the lane markings on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured, and there is no driving vehicle directly in front.
- › There is an object on the road that affects the identification of the lane markings (such as water, gaps, ruts, text signs, bumps or pits).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or separate.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn or a narrow road.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.
- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The followed vehicle has a relatively small tail dimension or very large ground clearance.
- › The steering wheel operation is unstable or your position in the lane is unstable.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take the braking measures:

- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.
- › There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speed.
- › An oncoming vehicle is running in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › A pedestrian, animal, roadblock, cone barrel, trailer, special-shaped vehicle or small vehicle (such as a bicycle or a motorcycle) appears.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.

Hill descent control system (HDC)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Hill descent control system introduction

While going downhill, the hill descent control system (HDC) may actively brake to ensure that the driver can maintain a constant speed and drive downhill safely.

⚠ WARNING




- › HDC is intended only to be an aid. At all times the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and always pay attention to the surrounding traffic.
- › In case of a very steep slope, the HDC may not function and thus the vehicle can't be driven down the slope at a constant speed. At this time, you can control the vehicle speed by stepping on the brake pedal.

Hill descent control instructions



65878563232B

When the power supply is in ON mode or the vehicle is started, press the button to turn on or off the HDC.

- › After the HDC is turned on, the hill descent control indicator light  on the instrument panel comes on.
- › After HDC is turned off, the hill descent control indicator light  on the instrument goes out.
- › When HDC is working, the hill descent control indicator light  on the instrument flashes.

i NOTICE

- › It is recommended that HDC should be used in lower gear position.
- › HDC will be automatically turned off when the vehicle speed is greater than 60 km/h.
- › With the HDC turned on, the speed can still be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Driving assist system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving assist system safety tips

About traffic safety

Never take a risk in driving because the vehicle is equipped with driving assist systems and always ensure that the vehicle speed and driving style adapt to vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.

About modification

Suspension modification or use of tyres or wheels of non-specified size will impact driving assist systems and may cause system malfunctions.

About sound and vibration

- › Some driving assist systems (such as anti-lock brake system) may create a vibration during work or the sound of the motor during working may be heard, which does not indicate a malfunction.

- › When the vehicle is started across due to battery loss, the engine may not run smoothly and the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system warning light turns on. This is caused by low battery voltage. This does not mean that the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system is faulty.

Anti-lock brake system

When brake is applied or the vehicle is braked suddenly during driving on wet and slippery road, the anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps to prevent wheels from locking to maintain steering control of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

During emergency braking, do not step on the brake pedal several times or gently step on it. Otherwise, it will lengthen the braking distance.

The ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the vehicle. Be sure to maintain an adequate safe distance from the vehicle traveling in front as your vehicle may require a longer braking distance, compared with vehicles not equipped with the ABS in the following cases:

- › When driving on muddy, gravel or snowy road.
- › When driving with tyre chains in place.
- › When driving on bumpy road.

Driving assist system

- › When driving on potholes or uneven road.

The ABS may not work effectively in the following conditions:

- › When the limit of tyre grip performance is exceeded (like using excessive wear tyre on snowy road).
- › When driving at a high speed on wet and slippery road.

Electronic braking force distribution system

The electronic braking force distribution (EBD) system is capable of automatically adjusting the front and rear braking force ratio to enhance braking efficiency. It complements the ABS for greater braking stability and thereby vehicle stability.

Braking force assist system

Stepping on brake pedal very quickly can trigger the braking force assist system to help increase the braking effect and shorten the braking distance during emergency braking.

Traction control system

When you start or accelerate on a wet and slippery road, the traction control system (TCS) helps to keep a driving force and avoid driving wheel spinning.

Rollover prevention system

When the vehicle turns a corner, the rollover prevention system (RMI) determines whether there is a risk of rollover by monitoring the movement status of the vehicle. If any, RMI will decelerate one or more wheels to refrain the vehicle from a rollover accident.

Secondary collision mitigation system

The secondary collision mitigation system (SCM) will automatically apply the braking to the vehicle after the first collision (airbag deployment) to reduce the vehicle speed or stop the vehicle, thereby reducing the chance and injury of a second collision.

HHC (Hill-start Hold Control)

When the driver starts on a slope and releases the brake pedal, the hill-start hold control (HHC) can maintain the braking force for about 2 seconds to effectively avoid rolling.

⚠ WARNING

When starting on a slope greater than 30%, the vehicle may still roll. Therefore, do not excessively rely on this function. Please pay attention to the safety of the driving.


Driving assist system

Electronic power steering system

The electric power steering system can adjust the power in real time by monitoring the driving speed, so as to ensure the portability of low-speed steering and the stability of high-speed steering and enhance the sense of security.

Electronic stability control

Electronic stability control (ESC) system can help reduce the risk of side slip, and improve driving stability by braking individual wheel under certain driving situation.

When ESC works, the  ESC indicator light on the instrument cluster flashes. Make sure to be careful at this time.

NOTICE

Generally speaking, the ESC is on throughout the driving process. The system can be turned off only under following special conditions:



- › Driving with tyre chains.
- › Driving in deep snow or on soft ground.
- › The vehicle is stuck and you need to free it.

Restart the ESC after finishing above conditions.

Turning on/off the system



21C10FC68AFF

After the vehicle starts, press the ESC OFF button . The ESC OFF indicator light  on the instrument cluster will light up, indicating that the system is off. Press the button again to restart the ESC system.

NOTICE

The ESC will be automatically turned on in the following conditions:

- › The vehicle starts.
- › The vehicle speed exceeds 140 km/h.

Driving assist system

Dynamic stability assist system

Under the condition that the adhesion coefficients of left and right wheels are quite different (for example, some snow and ice covered roads, wet and slippery roads, etc.), when the vehicle is braked or accelerated urgently, the DST will automatically adjust the steering wheel angle based on the rotational speed difference between the two wheels on the same axis and the dynamic variation of the vehicle, to correct the driving direction of the vehicle.

You can turn on or off the dynamic stability assist function through the **【Car】** → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

The DST function can only be used normally after the Electronic stability control system is turned on.

⚠ WARNING

› The system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.

› When this system works, it only automatically adjusts the steering wheel angle within a limited range. The driver needs to actively adjust the steering wheel angle to ensure correct direction of driving, depending on actual driving conditions.

Emission control system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Reminder

The emission control system may vary with different engine models. For the particular equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Do not modify any part of the engine or emission control system.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor measures the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust gases and reports that information to the ECU in order to regulate the engine's fuel-air ratio for optimum combustion efficiency and to reduce the amount of carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides contained in the exhaust.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter is the most important external purifier installed in the vehicle's exhaust system. The catalytic converter contains metallic catalysts that convert harmful gases such as carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides into harmless carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogen through oxidation and reduction reactions.

As long as the catalytic converter is used correctly, it generally does not require maintenance. Thus, it should not be disassembled without cause. If replacement is necessary, please contact the service provider.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter, please pay attention to the following items:

- › Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with more than the standard amount of manganese or sulphur.
- › Do not drive a vehicle with extremely low fuel level. If the fuel is exhausted, it will cause the engine to misfire (this may be confirmed by unstable engine operation or a loss of power), damaging the catalytic converter.
- › Do not idle the engine at a high speed for an extended time (5 minutes or longer).

Emission control system

- › When a problem with the engine is indicated (such as shutdown or performance degradation), please do not continue driving the vehicle.
- › Do not operate the engine with the spark plugs removed.
- › Do not start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it.
- › Do not add too much engine oil.
- › Please avoid striking the catalytic converter.

Turbocharger

The turbocharger can improve fuel efficiency of the engine, improve the vehicle's power and performance, and reduce the displacement of harmful compounds such as particulates and nitrogen oxides in the engine exhaust.

Fuel evaporation control unit

When the vehicle is running normally, the fuel evaporation control unit can make the fuel steam enter the engine to burn, so as to prevent the fuel steam from entering the atmosphere.

Crankcase emission control unit

The crankcase emission control unit guides the mixed gases within the crankcase (such as uncombusted fuel vapours, water vapour, and exhaust) through a connected pipe into an appropriate place in the air-intake pipe to return them to the cylinders and be combusted again. Thus, the exhaust gas can be reduced while the engine fuel economy improved.

On-board diagnostic system

The engine malfunction warning lamp is part of the vehicle's on-board diagnostic system.

The engine electronic control unit equipped with the on-board diagnostic system stores various fault information (especially when it comes to exhaust-emissions fault information). The fault information will be cleared if the battery cables are disconnected, making a rapid diagnosis difficult. Thus, please do not disconnect the battery cables when investigating why the engine malfunction warning lamp has illuminated.

Head up display system (HUD)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Head up display system introduction

The head up display (HUD) can project relevant information to an effective visual area within the driver's vision. By using this system, the driver can check the vehicle information during driving without lowering head, thereby avoiding distracting the driver's attention, and preventing the eye fatigue when the driver switches the angle of view while observing the road and the instrument panel.

i NOTICE

- › Under certain special weather conditions (such as rain, snow, strong sunlight, etc.), the information displayed on HUD may be unclear or disturbed.
- › Certain sunglasses can affect information reading.

Head-up display instructions

After the vehicle is started, you can set the function related to the head-up display through the **【Car】** → **【In-vehicle】** → **【Head-up display】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the HUD is activated, the following settings can be made:

- › You can adjust the brightness, height, and rotation of the HUD projection.
- › **【Adjust HUD via steering wheel】** : after touching this function, you can adjust the position and brightness of the HUD projection through the steering wheel buttons.
- › **【Mode selection】** : you can set **【NORMAL mode】** or **【OFF ROAD mode】** to switch between different HUD projections. After selecting **【NORMAL mode】** , you can choose the display content under this mode according to your needs.
- › **【HUD snow mode】** : if the projected display is close to the background colour of the vehicle, this function, when activated, will enhance the projected display.

i NOTICE

Depending on the market or the region, this function is displayed in **【HUD blue mode】** on some models.

Head up display system (HUD)

i NOTICE

The HUD settings on the multimedia may vary with the model configurations. Refer to the actual vehicle.

2

Driving

Instrument panel

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

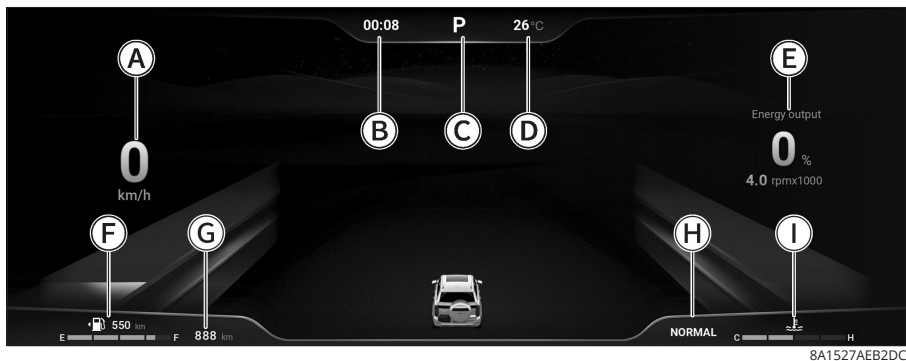
Instrument panel overview

The instrument panel is available in classic, off road and guide modes, with slightly different information displayed in the different modes.

Off-road mode: the instrument panel focuses on displaying off-road related information. For example: vehicle head direction, wheel angle, etc.

Guide mode: the instrument panel focuses on displaying navigation information.

The following is only introduced in classic mode.



- Ⓐ Speedometer
- Ⓑ Fuel gauge
- Ⓒ Digital clock
- Ⓓ Mileage
- Ⓔ Gear position
- Ⓕ All-terrain mode
- Ⓖ Exterior temperature
- Ⓖ Water temperature gauge
- Ⓗ Multi-information display

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Multi-information display


The display content (driving data, multimedia, engine speed, etc.) of the multi-information display can be set as required.

Instrument panel

Fuel gauge

It displays the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank and the range.

NOTICE

- › When you drive for an extended time on a slope or around a bend, the fuel displayed may become unstable as fuel moves around in the tank.
- › The range will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.
- › If the warning light  on the instrument panel is on, even if it shows that it can move farther, refuel as soon as possible.

2

Driving

Water temperature gauge

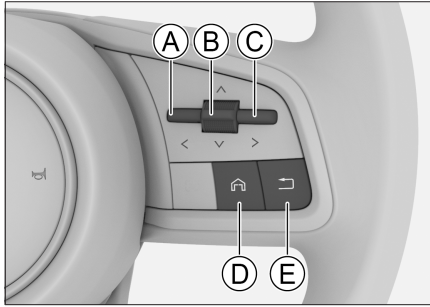
It displays the engine coolant temperature.

CAUTION

When the water temperature is close to the red warning zone, immediately slow down and find a safe spot to park your vehicle for inspection, and restart the vehicle after the engine water temperature is normal.

Instrument panel control


Control buttons




49F2AAC64564

- Ⓐ Left button
- Ⓑ Adjustment knob
- Ⓒ Right button
- Ⓓ Homepage button
- Ⓔ Back button

Hiding alarm message

Press the back button  to hide the currently displayed important alarm information.

Press and hold the back button  to hide all primary alarm messages.

NOTICE

When there is alarm information on the instrument panel interface, it needs to be hidden first. Otherwise, other control functions of the instrument panel cannot be used.

Viewing audio media information

Press the left button < or right button > until the multi-information display switches to the audio media interface. At this time, you can view the music or radio station being played.

Viewing Bluetooth phone information

Press the left button < or right button > until the multi-information display switches to the Bluetooth phone interface. After Bluetooth connection and synchronization of call records with the mobile phone, the following operations can be implemented on the Bluetooth phone interface:

- › Toggle the adjustment knob up/down to view the call records of the Bluetooth phone.
- › Press the adjustment knob to dial the selected phone.

Mode switch


Press the left button < or right button > until the multi-information display switches to the mode switch interface.

Toggle the adjustment knob up/down to switch the display modes of the instrument panel. It works after pressing the adjustment knob.

Viewing driving data

Press the left button < or right button > until the multi-information display switches to the driving data interface.


Instrument panel

Press the homepage button  to return directly to the driving data interface. On the driving data interface, the following operations can be performed:

- › Toggle the adjustment knob up/down to view the various driving data page by page.

It contains information after self-starting (range, average speed, driving time, average fuel consumption), information after self-reset (range, average speed, driving time, average fuel consumption), instantaneous fuel consumption, power indication, total range, tyre pressure monitoring, etc.

- › Press and hold the adjustment knob to view historical alarm information and reset travel information.

Press the back button  to return to the previous interface.

Restarting instrument panel

Press and hold the left and right adjustment knobs of the steering wheel at the same time for about 10 seconds to restart the audiovisual system and the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment, shift to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is stationary.

Instrument panel indicator lights

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument indicator lights

NOTICE

- › When the power supply mode is switched to ON, some indicator lights or warning lights will light up for a short time, indicating that the system self-test is in progress, which is a normal phenomenon.
- › Due to different model configurations, not all the indicator lights or warning lights on the instrument will light up.



Primary alarm indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle currently has primary alarms and that at least one primary alarm has been manually hidden.

WARNING

Do not ignore any alarm. Otherwise, serious damage to the vehicle or an accident may be caused.

NOTICE

All current alarms of the vehicle can be checked on the alarm interface of the instrument panel.



Turn indicator lights

When the left indicator is on, the left turn indicator light will flash.

When the right indicator is on, the right turn indicator light will flash.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn indicator lights and all exterior turn indicators will flash together.

CAUTION

When the turn indicator lights flash quickly, it usually means that the turn indicators are damaged. Replace them as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Light on indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the main lighting switch is turned on.



Position indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the position light and the license plate light are on.



High beam indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the high beam headlights are on.



High and low beam automatic switching indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto low-high beam function is turned on.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the auto low-high beam function is faulty. In this case, manually turn on the high beam or low beam headlights as needed, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front fog lights indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front fog lights are on.



Rear fog lights indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear fog lights are on.



Unfastened seat belt warning light

This light goes on to indicate that the driver, the front passenger or the second row passenger hasn't fastened the seat belt.

i NOTICE

Due to different model configurations, your vehicle may not be equipped with unfastened seat belt alarm function for passengers at the second row.



120km/h alarm indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the speed is over 120 km/h.



Airbag fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that there is a malfunction in the airbag system. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Door open warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the door or the hood is open or not fully closed.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Tyre pressure monitoring system warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, accompanied by a voice prompt. At this time, stop the vehicle for inspections and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light flashes for a period of time and goes on, it indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system fails, accompanied by several voice prompts.

WARNING

If this light turns on, it indicates that sharp turns or emergency braking should be avoided, and the vehicle should be parked at a safe place as soon as possible where inspection is performed.

Driving a vehicle when the tyre pressure is too low or the tyre temperature is too high will increase the possibility of tyre breakdown, and may even cause serious damage to the vehicle or lead to an accident.



Parking brake indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the parking brake is applied.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the brake disk temperature is too high or the pavement slope is too large. In this case, there is a risk of vehicle rolling. Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle on a flat road as soon as possible.



Parking brake fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that there is an electronic parking brake fault.



Auto vehicle hold indicator light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is turned on and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is turned on and in working status.



Anti-lock brake system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that there is a fault in the anti-lock brake system. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

Instrument panel indicator lights

When this light turns on, the vehicle can still be braked normally although the anti-lock function is not available.



Brake system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low, the braking force distribution system is faulty, or the electronic brake booster system is invalid.

In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre. Otherwise, a serious accident may be caused.



Electronic stability control indicator light

If this light flashes, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is working.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system fails.



Electronic stability control off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is off.



Hill descent control indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the hill descent control system is activated and ready for use.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the hill descent control system is working.



Front axle differential lock indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is locked successfully.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is faulty, go to the authorised service centre in time for inspection and repair.



Rear axle differential lock indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is locked successfully.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is faulty, go to the authorised service centre in time for inspection and repair.

Instrument panel indicator lights



The Tank turning indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the Tank turning function is activated and ready for use.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the Tank turning function is in working condition.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the Tank turning function is invalid.



Electric power steering system failure warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the steering assist effect is reduced, so more force is required to operate the steering wheel. If this light remains on after the vehicle is restarted or after a short running distance, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system fails and the assisted power no longer exists. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the vehicle, and then restart the vehicle within several minutes. If the light remains on, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

WARNING

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system will stop operation. At this time, you need stronger power to operate the steering wheel to realize steering function. Go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Water temperature warning light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the water temperature of the engine cooling system is excessively high. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection and repair. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Low fuel level warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the fuel is insufficient.

On slopes or during turning, the light may go on prematurely due to unstable fuel levels inside the fuel tank.



CAUTION

Do not drive the vehicle when the remaining fuel level is extremely low. Otherwise, the emission control system and powertrain system may be damaged due to running out of the fuel.



Engine malfunction warning light

If the light turns on after the engine is started, it indicates that the engine has a fault that affects emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

NOTICE

- › Failure of some of the vehicle's control systems (such as loss of communication signals in the hybrid system or charging system) may also cause this warning light to illuminate. If the warning light turns on, stop the vehicle at a safe place as soon as possible, switch the power supply mode to OFF, then restart the vehicle and check the warning light. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended that you go to the service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Please drive carefully and avoid high speeds before the malfunction is identified.
- › If this indicator light turns on frequently, it is recommended that you go to the service provider for inspection even if it is off after following the preceding steps.



Engine maintenance warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the engine has a fault not related to emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Engine oil pressure warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the oil is insufficient. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and shut down the engine. Otherwise, the engine parts may be seriously damaged. Check the oil level after a few minutes and add oil if necessary. If the oil level is normal and the light is still on, contact the authorised service centre.



Charging warning light

If this light turns on after the vehicle is started, it indicates that the battery charging system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Transmission overheat warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the transmission fluid temperature is too high (when the vehicle is started off frequently on the ramp or when the accelerator pedal is fully stepped etc., the light will turn on). At this point, park the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible to run at an idle speed and apply the parking brake to cool the transmission.

If the light stays on after the above handling, contact the authorised service centre.



Adaptive cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is turned on and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is turned on and the cruising speed has been set.

i NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruising speed.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Intelligent cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the intelligent cruise control function is turned on and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the intelligent cruise control function is turned on and the cruising speed has been set.



Off-road cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the off-road cruise control function is turned on and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the off-road cruise control function is turned on and in working state.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the off-road cruise control system is faulty. In this case, do not use the off-road cruise control function, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Rear side assist system warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the sensor of the rear side assist system is blocked. In this case, check whether there are objects covering the inner/outer surface of both sides of the rear bumper. If any, remove them right away.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that something is wrong with the rear side assist system. In this case, do not use the rear side assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane change assist indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the lane change assist function is enabled.



Rear cross traffic alert indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear cross traffic alert function is enabled.



Lane departure indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is turned on.

Instrument panel indicator lights

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use this function, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane keeping indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the lane keeping function has been activated.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the lane keeping function is faulty. In this case, do not use this function, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front Collision Assist (FCA) indicator light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the Front Collision Assist (FCA) function is faulty. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front Collision Assist (FCA) off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the Front Collision Assist (FCA) function is turned off.



READY indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is started and ready for normal driving.



EV indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is only using electric power and the engine is not running.



Traction battery fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the traction battery has a minor fault.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that there is a serious fault of the traction battery and the power system will be powered off urgently.



Power system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle fails. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle has a serious fault and the vehicle cannot continue driving. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Power reduction indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle has a fault that affects the power output of the whole vehicle. In this case, the vehicle power is reduced and the vehicle speed is restricted.



Brake energy recovery fault indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake energy recovery function fails.

2

Driving

Power management system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to the power supply management system

The power management system can monitor the power consumption of each electrical equipment in the vehicle and allocate the power reasonably to improve the starting performance of the vehicle and extend the service life of the battery.

The power management system mainly has the following functions:

› **Battery monitoring**

The current SOC and health degree of the battery can be calculated accordingly as the voltage, current and temperature of the battery are continuously monitored by sensors.

› **Sleep power management**

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the parking period of the vehicle, and gradually shut down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Smart DC Charging**

It continuously monitors the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the long-term parking period of the vehicle. If the system detects a drained battery, it will automatically control the traction battery to charge the battery to ensure starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Static power management**

It continuously monitors the power consumption of various electrical equipment when the vehicle is not started, and gradually shuts down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

Power management system

i NOTICE

It is impossible for a power management system to go beyond the boundaries of physical laws. Note that there are limits to the power and service life of the battery.

2

Driving

Information you should know

The power management system will give top priority to ensuring the starting performance of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is not started, the battery power is supplemented by the traction battery. If the traction battery power is insufficient, the battery power will stop replenishing. The use of electrical equipment will directly consume the battery power in this case.

In these situations, the power management system will operate to control the power distribution.

Parking the vehicle for a long time

If the vehicle is not driven for several days or weeks, when the power management system detects that the battery power is too low, it controls the traction battery to charge the battery. If the traction battery power is too low to charge the battery, the power supply management system will gradually turn off the electrical equipment or reduce the electrical energy being used by the electrical equipment, so as to reduce power consumption and maintain the vehicle starting performance for a longer time.

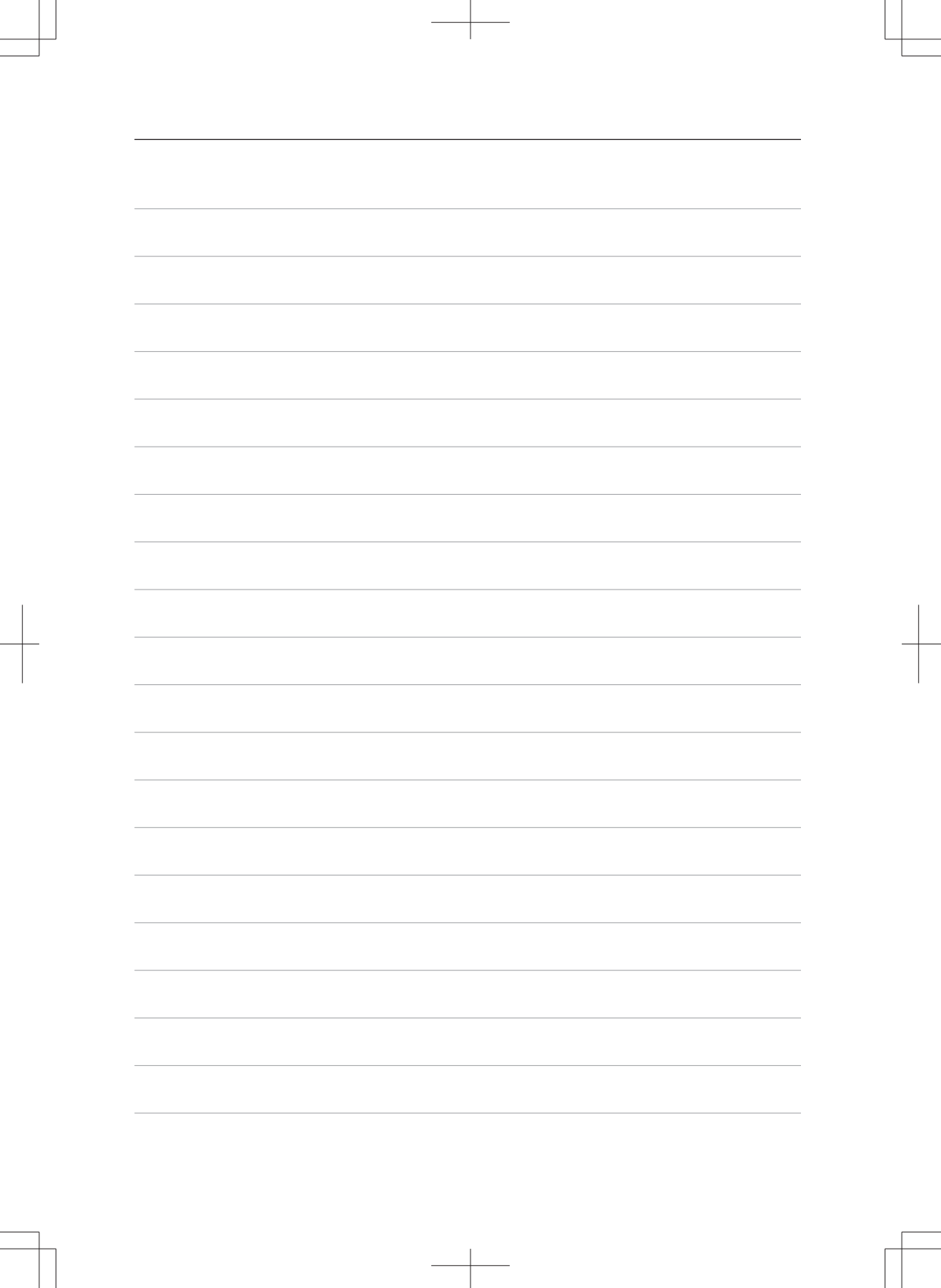
If the vehicle has been parked for a long time, certain convenient functions (such as remote unlocking, mobile APP control function, etc.) may not be available. After starting the vehicle, these functions will be restored.

When the vehicle is not started

If you listen to the radio or use other functions of the audio visual system without starting the vehicle, the power management system coordinates the battery and the traction battery to provide electricity in this case. If the traction battery is too low, the battery power will be gradually consumed.

Power management system

If the battery power consumption affects the starting of the vehicle, a message will be displayed on the multimedia display screen or the instrument panel. At this point, if you want to continue using these functions, you will need to start the vehicle.



3

Audiovisual system

Related tips..... 220

Panel introduction..... 222

Display screen introduction 225

Function introduction 227

Related tips

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- › Ensure that your use of any of the system's features does not distract you and thereby interfere with safe driving. Your most important responsibility while driving is for the safety of the drive. You must obey all traffic regulations.
- › During driving, the driver is not allowed to operate the system and must keep the volume of the system at an appropriate level, so as not to affect driving safety due to lack of concentration.
- › This system may only be used in areas permitted by law. Some national or local regulations may prohibit use of the display screen within the driver's field of view.
- › Do not disassemble or modify the system.

- › When a failure occurs, stop using the system and contact authorised service centre. Do not try to repair the system by yourself.

About the use

- › For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- › Do not press the buttons or knobs on the panel firmly.
- › Do not press the screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- › When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- › Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs in process of operation.

About the radio

When driving the car, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.

About USB storage devices

Since there are various types of USB storage devices, this system may not be compatible with all USB storage devices.

About Bluetooth

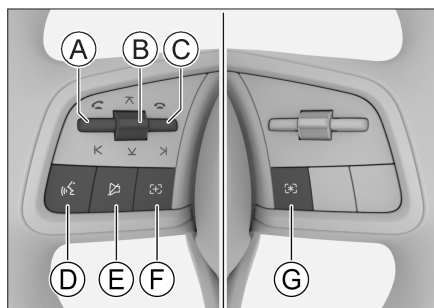
- › Since there are a great number of smartphone brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all the smartphones.
- › If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on the smartphone and search it again.
- › If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the smartphone, and pair it again.
- › If Bluetooth does not function properly when in use, disconnect the Bluetooth and reconnect it.

Panel introduction

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Multimedia control buttons





D3103D96E2F7

- Ⓐ Left/answer button
- Ⓑ Adjustment toggle switch
- Ⓒ Right/hang up button
- Ⓓ Voice button
- Ⓔ Mute button
- Ⓕ Custom button
- Ⓖ Custom button

The steering wheel multimedia buttons are for the basic controls in the default option, as well as for the vehicle controls in special options and call options, increasing the scalability.

The priority from high to low is: Call option > Special option > Default option.

Call option



When there is an incoming call, press the answer button  to answer the call. Press the hang up button  to end the call.



Special option

In special options, there will be operation prompts related to the steering wheel buttons on the relevant interface. Operate according to the prompts.








Default option

The basic functions of the steering wheel buttons are as follows:

- › For playing multimedia: press the left button  or right button  to switch between tracks, and press and hold the button for fast rewinding/fast forwarding.

For listening to a radio: press the left button  or right button  to search for the valid radio, and press and hold the button to switch to the favourite radio.

Panel introduction

- › Move the left adjustment toggle switch upwards to increase the volume. Move the left adjustment toggle switch downwards to reduce the volume.
Press the left adjustment toggle switch to play/pause the multimedia.
- › Press the voice button  to enable or disable the local voice control.
If the local voice control has been enabled, press and hold the voice button  to exit the local voice control.
If the connection is not connected, press and hold the voice button  to enter the connection setting interface.
If the connection is connected, press and hold the voice button  to start Apple CarPlay or Android Auto's voice control.
- › Press the mute button  to enable or disable the multimedia mute.
- › Press the custom button  /  to execute the set function. Press and hold the button to enter the button function setting interface, and you can set the custom function of the button.

Restarting the system

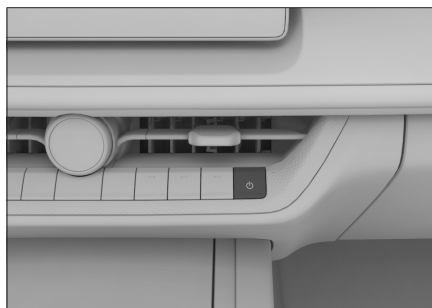
Press and hold the left and right adjustment toggle switches at the same time for about 10 seconds to restart the audiovisual system and the instrument cluster system.

Move the left and right adjustment toggle switches downwards for about 10 seconds at the same time to restart the audiovisual system.

CAUTION

To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment, shift to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is stationary.

Multimedia switch



92D14F57348C

Press the button to enter the mute mode. Press the button again to exit the mute mode.

Press and hold the button for about 3 seconds to turn off the multimedia display screen. Press and hold the button again for about 3 seconds or tap any position on the multimedia display screen to turn on the multimedia display screen.

Press and hold the button for about 10 seconds to restart the audiovisual system.

3

Audiovisual system

Panel introduction

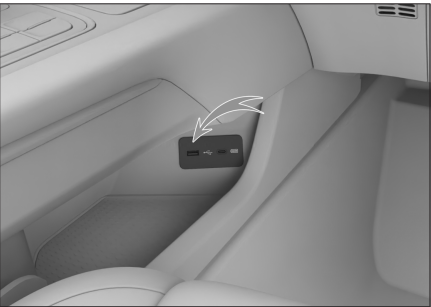
⚠ CAUTION

To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment, shift to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is stationary.

External devices

USB interface

The USB interface is located in the right hollowed-out place of the auxiliary instrument panel.



E8939574D5A1

i NOTICE

- › Ensure a stable connection between the external device and the input port.
- › Do not plug and unplug the device at will during playing to avoid problems such as the system not being able to recognize the device normally.

Media specifications

This system supports the following media specifications:

Media	Specifications
USB device	USB storage devices with partition formats of FAT16, FAT32 and ExFAT
Bluetooth audio	Bluetooth core protocol version 5.0 (supporting backwards compatibility 4.2 and below, supporting BLE), AVRCP version 1.6, A2DP version 1.3 Bluetooth audio devices

File format

This system supports the following file formats:

File	Format
Audio	MP3, WMA, AAC, AAC PLUS (playback: ACC LC, HE-AAC v1, HE AAC v2), WAV/WAVE, FLAC, APE, OGG vorbis, LPCM
Video	MP4, M4V, MOV, 3GP, WMV, AVI, MPEG, MKV, WebM

i NOTICE

Even file formats supported by this system may cause non-playback due to file characteristics (such as file quality, bit rate, frame rate, resolution, compression quality, or corruption), playback environment and storage devices.

3

Audiovisual system

Display screen introduction

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.




About multimedia display screen

CAUTION

- › Some national or local regulations may prohibit operating the display screen while driving. Please comply with local regulations.
- › For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- › Do not press the display screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- › When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- › Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs during operation.

Central display screen status bar

The status bar icons are displayed at the top of the central display screen to show each function status. The status bar icons will change in real time according to functional characteristics, signal intensity, connection status, switch status, etc.

Icon	Function status
	Time display
	Temperature display
	It indicates signal strength of the Internet of Vehicles (IoV) . The icon will change according to the network status. When Wi-Fi is not connected, corresponding textual prompts of the network status will also be displayed, such as 4G, 3G and so on.












3




Audiovisual system

Display screen introduction

3

Audiovisual system


Icon	Function status
	When Wi-Fi is connected, it indicates signal strength of the wireless network. The icon will also change according to the network status.
	Hotspot not connected
	Hotspot connected
	Unread messages
	Bluetooth not connected
	Bluetooth connected
	USB connected
	USB abnormal
	Wireless charging standby
	Wireless charging in progress
	Wireless charging completed

Icon	Function status
	Driver monitoring system in normal operation
	Driver monitoring system failure
	Driver monitoring system downgrading

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Homepage

Touch the homepage button  in the sidebar to enter the homepage interface. It includes application cards, OFF ROAD mode portal, sidebar, etc.

Application cards

Slide on the application card area left and right to browse the application cards that are not displayed.

Press and hold and drag the application card to adjust the card order.







Some cards display shortcut function button or state, and touch the shortcut function button to perform corresponding functions.

Touch the non-shortcut button position of the application card to switch to the corresponding application interface.



OFF ROAD mode

On the homepage interface, slide up from the bottom centre of the screen to switch to the OFF ROAD mode interface.

Sidebar

- › Touch the application button  to enter the full application interface. The application icon is displayed. Touch the application icon to switch to the corresponding application interface.
- › Touch the car button  to enter the car interface.
- › If the connection is not connected, touch the connection button  to enter the connection setting interface. If the connection is connected, the corresponding connection icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to switch to the corresponding connection interface.
- › Touch the 360 button  to enter the AVM interface.
- › Touch the navigation button  to enter the navigation interface.
- › Touch the settings button  to enter the settings interface.

Function introduction

- › Touch the music button  to enter the music interface.
- › Touch the homepage button  to enter the homepage interface.

NOTICE

The icons and functions in the sidebar cannot all be displayed. The specific displayed items may vary with the model configurations or system versions. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Shortcut panel

On the most interfaces, sliding down from the top of the screen will show the shortcut panel.

3

Audiovisual system

Shortcut switch

Touch the switch to switch, turn on or turn off the corresponding function. For some switches, touch and hold the switch for a long time to switch to the corresponding setting screen.

Touch the **【Customize】** button to switch to the editing interface and you can change the shortcut switch icon.


Brightness/volume adjustment

Volume: tap and drag the sliding block to adjust the volume.


Screen brightness: tap and drag the sliding block to adjust the screen brightness.

Local media

USB video

Touch the  Application→ **【USB Video】** button in turn to switch to the USB video interface, and you can play the video in the USB storage device inserted into the on-board USB interface (located in the hollow place of the auxiliary instrument panel).

Music


Touch the  Application→ **【Music】** button in turn to switch to the music interface. It includes Bluetooth music, USB music, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto audio.

To play Bluetooth music, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto, go to the **【Settings】** → **【Connection】** interface to pair and connect other audio playback devices.

To play USB music, insert the USB storage device that stores the audio into the on-board USB interface (located in the hollow place of the auxiliary instrument panel).


Function introduction

Radio


Touch the Application  → **【Radio】** button in turn to switch to the radio interface, and you can listen to the radio.

Online media

Online music

Tap the  Application → **【Online Music】** button in turn to switch to the online music interface, where you can listen to online music.


Online radio

Tap the  Application → **【Online Radio】** button in turn to switch to the online radio interface, where you can listen to online radio station.

NOTICE

- › To use the online media services, you need to login and bind the relevant account. Follow the interface prompts for login and binding.
- › If you wish to play charged content or purchase the membership, relevant fees will be incurred. Make a purchase on a voluntary basis according to the need.
There may be a delay after purchasing a membership due to network signal etc. If you have not obtained your benefits after a few minutes, restart your system.
- › Network traffic will be consumed when you use online media services that require Internet access.

System setting

Touch the Application  → **【Settings】** button in turn to switch to the settings interface.

NOTICE

The system setting items and functions may vary with the model configurations or system versions. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Connection settings

- › **【Bluetooth】** : you can touch the switch to enable or disable the Bluetooth.
- › **【Bluetooth visible】** : after the function is enabled, other devices are allowed to check the Bluetooth of the system and perform pairing connection.

Function introduction

- › **【Device name】** : it displays the device name of the system and you can change it to a custom name.
- › **【Current connection】** : it displays the information of the currently connected device.

Connection methods include Bluetooth, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto.

Icon states include ON (Connected) and OFF (Not connected).

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon (ON) to disconnect the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon (OFF) to make an Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection with the corresponding device.

Touch the Bluetooth icon to disconnect the Bluetooth.

- › **【Pairing history】** : it displays the information about the paired devices, including the device name and connection mode icons.

Touch the Bluetooth, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon to make a Bluetooth, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection with the corresponding device.

- › **【Available devices】** : it displays a list of nearby devices that can be paired with Bluetooth. You can initiate a pairing request by touching the device name in the list. Touch the **【Search】** button to search for Bluetooth devices again.

With the first Bluetooth pairing connection with other devices, if the device supports Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the system will prompt whether to enable Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection, and you can choose according to your needs.

i NOTICE

If you choose to cancel the connection and you want to connect the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto of the device again, you need to delete this device from the current connection or pairing history, then reconnect Bluetooth and select Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection according to the prompts.

i NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Hotspot settings

- › **【Access point】** : you can touch the switch to enable or disable the hotspot. After the function is enabled, other devices can connect to this hotspot.

i NOTICE

The hotspot of some models only supports the realization of mobile phone connection function, and cannot provide mobile Internet service. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

- › **【Device name】** : it displays the name of the hotspot device and you can change it to a custom name.
- › **【Password】** : it displays the hotspot password, which can be modified to a custom password.
- › **【Connected devices】** : it displays a list of devices connected to the vehicle's hotspot.

i NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Wi-Fi settings

- › **【Wi-Fi】** : you can touch the switch to enable or disable Wi-Fi.
- › **【Current connection】** : it displays the connected network. Touch the **【Disconnect】** button to disconnect the network.
- › **【Available networks】** : it displays the available networks and you can connect to the network by touching the network name.

i NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Function introduction


Sound settings


- › **【System sound】** : You can adjust the voice volume, multimedia volume and call volume etc.; turn on or off the adaptive starting volume, multimedia volume reduction during navigation broadcast, alarm voice broadcast, and system audio reminder etc.; as well as select the audible car warnings, and speed-sensitive volume control.
- › **【Sound-effect settings】** : you can select or set the best locations, and adjust the equalizer and sound field.

Display settings

- › **【Automatic brightness mode】** : you can touch the switch to enable or disable this function. After the function is enabled, the screen brightness mode is intelligently switched according to the light intensity and position light changes.
- › **【Instrument screen brightness adjustment】** : you can set the brightness adjustment for the instrument panel display.
- › **【Central control screen brightness adjustment】** : you can set the brightness adjustment for the multimedia display screen.
- › **【Vehicle backlight brightness adjustment】** : you can adjust the backlight brightness of instrument panel display, multimedia display screen, and interior buttons.
- › **【Time display format】** : the system time display can be selected as 12-hour or 24-hour format.
- › **【Automatic time synchronization】** : you can touch the switch to enable or disable this function. After the function is enabled, the time automatically synchronise.
- › Other settings include **【Time settings】** , **【Date settings】** , **【Area settings】** , **【Time zone settings】** , **【Tyre pressure unit】** , **【Temperature unit】** , and **【Metric/Imperial switching】** .

Personalized setting

- › **【Voice】** : you can enable or disable the voice function service, view the default voice wake-up words, set the custom wake-up words, the voice wake-up switch and the shortcut instructions switch, and view the voice-activated assistant functions.
- › **【Driver's screen display】** : you can select the instrument display mode.
- › **【Steering wheel + custom setting】** : you can select the custom function of the button  on the steering wheel.

- › **【Steering wheel * custom setting】** : you can select the custom function of the button  on the steering wheel.

Privacy settings

- › **【Privacy policy】** : touch this button to view the privacy policy of the infotainment system.
- › **【User agreement】** : touch this button to view the user agreement of the IVI system.
- › **【Withdrawal of consent to privacy policy】** : touch this button to withdraw the authorization of the privacy agreement.
- › Touch any application button to set the privacy permission for the corresponding application, including location service, vehicle microphone, etc.

System

- › **【Version information】** : you can view and modify the system device name, view the vehicle system software version, and upgrade the system.
- › **【Reset and restore】** : you can reset system settings or restore to factory settings.
Reset system settings: reset all system settings to default values.
Restore to factory settings: restore all settings (system setting and car) to default values. All local files, application data, personal files, etc. will be deleted.
Authorise remote log collection: it can be activated or deactivated by setting. After it is activated, the log data can be uploaded.

NOTICE

About resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings:

- › During the process of resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings, the interface cannot be operated.
- › The operations of resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings cannot be cancelled.
- › Conditions for restoring to factory settings: the power supply is in ON mode, and the P gear position is engaged and the vehicle is stationary.

NOTICE

About system upgrades:

Function introduction

3

Audiovisual system

- › Your vehicle is equipped with an online software upgrade (OTA) system that allows you to upgrade internal software of the vehicle, so as to keep the internal software system up-to-date with the latest or appropriate version, and improve performance of the vehicle or introduce new features. It is recommended that you should install the available software version as soon as possible.
- › When there is a system software upgrade task, the vehicle will automatically receive the upgrade push message when it is powered on and connected to the network; you can also touch the button of check for updates in the system setting to detect whether the vehicle currently has a new version.
- › To ensure safety during the upgrade, place the vehicle in a safe environment, be sure to put the vehicle in the P or N gear position and apply the parking brake to keep the vehicle in a stationary state.
- › The system software upgrade will consume a certain amount of power. Make sure the battery power is sufficient and switch off the high-power electrical appliances (such as air conditioning, lights, speakers, etc.) before the upgrade.
- › Before the upgrade, read the licence agreement and precautions in the installation confirmation interface carefully. If you want to know the specific content of this upgrade, touch the update details to view it.
- › During the upgrade, functions of the vehicle are unavailable, and the vehicle can not be driven; fault prompts and restarts are normal phenomena; do not power it off or operate to change the state of the vehicle. When the upgrade is completed, the functions will return to normal.
- › After the upgrade is completed, check the upgrade results to ensure that all software is installed successfully. If the upgrade fails or if there is any exception in the upgrade process, please contact the authorised service centre in time.
- › After the upgrade is successful, the updated vehicle systems, functions, interfaces, operating methods, etc. may be changed and may not be consistent with the description of the manual. The updated information will be included in the interface reminder during the upgrading progress.

Communication

Tap the **Application** → **Phone** button in turn to switch to the communication interface. If the Bluetooth devices are not connected, go to the **Application** → **Settings** → **Connection** to turn on Bluetooth for pairing.

- › After inputting the telephone number, tap the dial button  to make a call.




- › Touch the **【Contacts】** button to display the contacts list after synchronizing. Tap a contact or phone number in the list to make the call.
- › Touch the **【Call records】** button to display the call history after synchronizing. Tap any contact record in the list to make a call.

NOTICE

To use the functions of contacts and call records, authorization is required on the paired mobile phone. Generally, in the process of pairing, a prompt asking for permission will be displayed on the phone.

Calling

After the call is established, switch to the call interface.



- › Tap the hang up button  to end the call.
- › Tap the microphone button  to turn the on-board microphone off or on.
- › Tap the private/hands-free button  to switch to the private mode or the hands-free mode.

Private mode: calling through the phone connected to the Bluetooth of the system

Hands-free mode: calling through the on-board speaker or microphone

- › Tapping the pad button  can enable or disable the dial pad.

Incoming call

When there is an incoming call, the incoming call window will pop up and you can tap the answer button  to answer the call. Tap the hang up button  to end the call.

WARNING

The driver must always concentrate on driving the vehicle and must not be distracted by calls to avoid accidents.


- › Use a Bluetooth phone only when road, traffic and weather conditions permit.
- › The volume should be adjusted so that signals from outside like those coming from police cars or fire trucks can be heard at all times.
- › Calls may not be made in areas with no or weak network signal, and in tunnels or garages.
- › When the driver needs to operate the mobile phone, he/she shall first park the vehicle temporarily in a safe place.

Function introduction

NOTICE


This communication device conforms to standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Power

Touch the  Application→【Power】 button in turn to switch to the power interface. You can view recent average fuel consumption and energy recovery trends by mileage and date.

Voice assistant


Voice settings

Voices settings can be made through the  Application→【Settings】→【Personalisation】→【Voice】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

You can turn on or off the voice function service, view the default voice wakeup words, set the custom wakeup words, the voice wakeup switch and the quick command switch, and view the voice assistant skill description.

Instructions

There are several ways to activate the voice assistant:

- › Press  voice button on the steering wheel.
- › Voice wakeup: by the default wakeup words or the custom wakeup words.

WARNING

When you control the vehicle using Voice Assistant, please pay attention to the surroundings and personal safety to avoid pinch, collisions and other severe accident.

NOTICE

- › The success rate of voice recognition will be affected by environmental noise, network, usage habits, pronunciation and other factors. The specific use effect is subject to the actual vehicle application environment.
- › Some functions of voice assistance require Internet access.

I Space


Touch  application→ **【I Space】** button to switch to I space interface.

NOTICE

Due to different countries and regions, some vehicle models may not equipped with I space. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Cave time

On the I space interface, touch **【Cave time】** button to enter cave time mode.

Touch  setting button to perform rest setting. It can used to turn on and set rest duration setup reminder, seat resting position memory etc. Touch **【Confirm】** button to save the settings.

- › The system will display the white noise. The sounds can be switched by swiping the screen left and right.

The white noise is a kind of noise (for example, the sound of camp fire and rain etc.), which can release emotion, concentrate attention and have a certain calming function.

- › The sunroof will automatically lift a certain gap, and the windows will close.

When the set rest duration setup time is up, the system will perform alarm-clock warning.

Sweet home

On the I space interface, touch **【Sweet home】** button to enter sweet home mode.

- › The system will display background music. You can switch music by swiping the screen left and right or touching the left and right arrow.
- › The sunroof will automatically lift a certain gap, and the windows will close.
- › The ambient light will automatically turn on.
- › The air-conditioning will automatically turn on if the air-conditioning is in off state.

Connection

Function introduction

The connection function can project some mobile phone applications to the on-board multimedia display screen for display and control, mainly including navigation, music, telephone, etc. This can ensure you have a safer and more convenient vehicle experience.


Function introduction


i NOTICE

- › Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some iPhones may not support the Apple CarPlay function.
- › If the Android Auto app is not installed on your Android phone, download the latest app from the Google Play App Store and install it. Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some Android phones may not support the Android Auto function.
- › When the connection is connected, the Bluetooth phone function is not available, and the connection function can be used at this time.

Connection portal


The connection icon is displayed in the sidebar:

- › If the connection is not connected, touch the connection button  in the sidebar to enter the connection interface.
- › If an Apple CarPlay is connected, the Apple CarPlay icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to switch to the corresponding Apple CarPlay interface.
- › If Android Auto is connected, the Android Auto icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to switch to the corresponding Android Auto interface.

Touch the application button  to enter the application interface to display Apple CarPlay and Android Auto icons:

- › If the Apple CarPlay is not connected, the Apple CarPlay application icon is greyed and cannot be operated. If the Apple CarPlay is connected, the Apple CarPlay application icon will illuminate. Touch this icon to enter the Apple CarPlay interface.
- › If the Android Auto is not connected, the Android the Auto application icon is greyed. Touching this icon will pop up the connection method prompt interface. If the Android Auto is connected, the Android Auto application icon will illuminate. Touch this icon to enter the Android Auto interface.

Wireless connection

You can turn on the on-board Bluetooth, pair and connect iPhone or Android phone with the on-board Bluetooth on the  Application → **【Settings】** → **【Connection】** interface. Then follow the prompts to complete the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection.

In the **【Settings】** → **【Connection】** → **【Current connection】** interface, touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon (ON) to disconnect the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Wired connection

Use the mobile phone USB cable to connect the iPhone or Android phone with the on-board USB interface (located in the hollow place of the auxiliary instrument panel), and then follow the prompts to use the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Disconnect the USB cable directly to exit the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile. Otherwise the connection may fail.

Personal centre

Touch the **☰ Application** → **【Users】** button to switch to the personal centre interface.

Account login

On the personal centre interface, tap the **【Login】** button to switch to the login interface. You can login to your account through various methods.

After logging in

After logging in to your account, you will be returned to the personal centre interface.

i NOTICE

Some functions of the personal centre can only be set up and used by the owner account (the account with the avatar wearing a crown).

- › Touch the **【Switch account】** button to enter the switching account interface. You can switch between accounts or log in to another account. If the currently logged-in account is the owner account, you can delete other accounts.
- › Touch the **【Log out】** button to log out of the current login account. If you check to delete the account information, the relevant information of the account in the vehicle will be cleared.
- › Tap the **【Privacy Policy】** button to view the privacy policy of the vehicle.

Function introduction

- › Tap the **【User agreement】** button to view the user agreement of the vehicle.
- › Tap the **【Withdrawal of consent to privacy policy】** button to show the withdrawal of privacy agreement dialog box and confirm it to withdraw the authorization of the privacy agreement.

Messages centre

Tap the **■ Application** → **【Messages】** button to switch to the message centre. After logging into your personal centre account, you can use the message centre function. Messages received by the system are displayed and can also be viewed and managed.

Weather

Tap the **■ Application** → **【Weather】** button in turn to switch to the weather interface. You can check the weather information for the current day and the next few days.

i NOTICE

Weather information is for reference only. The weather function can only be used normally when the network signal and location service are normal.

Navigation

Map interface

Tap the navigation button **📍** on the sidebar to enter the navigation interface.

Function introduction



- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Ⓐ Destination search | Ⓓ Map perspective |
| Ⓑ Vehicle position | Ⓔ Navigation mute |
| Ⓒ Navigation setting | Ⓕ Return to centre point |

Some function buttons will be automatically hidden if they are not operated for a period of time. Touch the non-button location on the map to call up the hidden function buttons.

Destination search

Tap this button to switch to the destination search interface, which contains the following functions:

- › You can search for a destination by entering the destination name and the keywords.
- › You can view the history of searches and destinations, and you can also edit them or set one of them as a destination.
- › You can set your home address or company address and set it as a destination quickly once you have set it.
- › You can access your favourites and view the locations you have favorited. And you can also view and delete favorited locations and set one of them as a destination.

Navigation mute

Touch the mute button to enable or disable the navigation mute function.

Function introduction

Map perspective

Tap this button to switch the map view to head-up , due north-up or 3D mode.

Navigation setting

On the map interface, tap the navigation setting button to switch to the navigation setting interface.

You can set Traffic, Auto zoom, Voice guidance, Vehicle icon, Route options, Clear personal data, Map management, Version information, etc.

Vehicle position

It shows the location of your vehicle on the map.

Return to centre point

Tap this button to return to the map centre line point.

About navigation

- › It is recommended not to operate this navigation while driving the vehicle. Please operate under the premise of ensuring safety after parking to prevent traffic accidents or other dangerous situations.
- › The functions and service provided by the navigation, including location search, route planning, travel navigation and traffic conditions, are for reference only. Please do not take them as the only reference for driving or travelling. Please refer to the actual traffic and road conditions, and strictly abide by traffic laws and traffic rules.
- › Using services that require Internet access, such as online navigation, traffic conditions and data downloads, consumes network traffic.
- › Some online functions and services will not be available when the vehicle is not connected to the Internet and only uses offline navigation (such as real-time traffic, traffic restriction notice, etc.).

4

Safety

Seat belts	244
Airbags	249
Child restraint system.....	256
Vehicle anti-theft system.....	264
Emergency shut-off system	266
Event data recorder	267

Seat belts

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

4

Safety

- › The shoulder belt must not hang on the neck area, or pass under the arm-pit area.
- › The lap belt must be secured as firmly as possible around the lower part of the hip bone.
- › Each seat belt can only be used by one person. More than one person (including children) must not share the same seat belt.

If more than two people wear the same seat belt, when the vehicle is involved in a collision, not only the seat belt can not disperse the impact, but there is a danger of two people colliding with each other.
- › The seat belt shall not be twisted or slack.
- › Do not wrap the seat belt around objects with sharp corners, or it may be damaged during an accident.

- › Never use a seat belt that has undergone strong impact from an accident or which is otherwise damaged.
- › Do not remove, disassemble or alter seat belts.
- › Do not use the seat belt with foreign object in the buckle.
- › We suggest that when you use the seat belt, you shall keep your seat belt clean. Oil and water-based materials such as soil, oil stain, water, beverage, food residue, shall not be attached to the seat belt so as to ensure that it can be pulled out and retracted smoothly.
- › Do not use organic substances, such as benzene or gasoline, to clean the seat belts, and do not bleach or dye them.
- › Children must not play with the seat belt.

If a child accidentally wraps the seat belt around his or her neck while playing with the seat belt, he/she may not be able to pull the seat belt, resulting in serious injury or even death. In this case, if the locking tab of seat belt cannot be released, use a pair of scissors to cut the seat belt.

- › Inside seat belt design is mainly based on adult size, so please install proper child restraint system for children.

When the seat belt is being used correctly, if the belt is in contact with the child's neck or jaw area or slack to the hip, please switch to a child seat instead.

If the child is old enough to use inside seat belt, he (she) shall wear the belt properly.

› Precautions for pregnant women

We strongly suggest that you use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor. The recommended way of wearing the seat belt for pregnant women is fundamentally the same as for other passengers. However, such passengers should take note of the following:

- 1) The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible in the abdomen area, below the bulge of the belly.
- 2) The shoulder belt should run over the passenger's shoulder, over the chest area but avoid the passenger's abdomen area.

If the seat belt is worn incorrectly, during emergency braking or collisions, the seat belt may tighten over the abdomen area, causing injury or even death to the pregnant mother and unborn child.

› We strongly recommend that passengers who are ill or disabled use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor.

- › When the seat belt is not in use, it shall be fully retracted. Do not twist or jam the seat belt, and do not allow the seat belt to touch any sharp objects. The seat belt buckle cannot be blocked by foreign objects. Otherwise, correct engagement of the seat belt locking tab and the buckle will be affected.

Wear the seat belt properly

- › Adjust seat backrest until it is vertical or near-vertical and provides adequate back support.
- › The seat belt shall be neat.
- › The shoulder belt should lie flat on the centre of the shoulder and not on the neck or elsewhere away from the shoulder.
- › The lap belt should be, as much as possible, fastened around the lower part of the hip bone.

WARNING

- › During the drive, all passengers must fasten their seat belts in the correct fashion. Failure to do so can lead to severe injury or even death from collisions or emergency braking as passengers' bodies are not sufficiently bound to seats.

Seat belts

- › At all times, even if the driving distance is short, all passengers including the driver in the vehicle should wear their seat belts properly. Otherwise if an accident occurs, the risk of injury or death can be increased.

Pretensioner seat belt

Both driver's seat and front passenger's seat are equipped with pretensioner seat belt.

When a collision occurs, the pretensioner can retract the seat belt in an instant to secure the passenger to the seat as much as possible.

The force limiter can maintain seat belt load at an acceptable level and reduce force exerted on the passenger's chest.

Operating conditions

The pretensioner seat belt works when the vehicle receives a significant impact from the front.

It may not work when the following mild impacts occur:

- › When the vehicle hits a concrete wall square at a speed below 25 km/h.
- › When the vehicle collides with an object with a small surface area, such as a fixed electrical pole or tree, at a speed lower than 35 km/h.

The pretensioner seat belt may not fully function when the vehicle is subjected to the following severe collision.

- › The vehicle flips over by 90° or 180°.

- › When the impact comes from the side or rear of the vehicle.

WARNING

- › When using the pretensioner seat belt, please adjust the seat to the optimal driving position. Otherwise, the pretensioner seat belt may not work properly, which could cause serious injury or even death.
- › If you wish to install, remove or dismantle the pretensioner seat belt, be sure to contact authorised service centre. If the pretensioner seat belt is not used correctly, it will not work as normal. It may cause severe injury or even death in an accident.
- › The pretensioner seat belt cannot be inflated repeatedly.

After the pretensioner has been inflated during the first collision, you should not extend or retract the seat belt again when the second and subsequent collisions occur. Be sure to contact authorised service centre for replacement.

- › When the pretensioner seat belt is inflated, there may be loud sounds and white smoke emanating from the device. This will not lead to a fire or cause harm to the human body.

› When a pretensioner seat belt needs to be replaced and disposed of, be sure to contact authorised service centre. Inadvertent/accidental movements of the pretensioner seat belt can cause harm to the human body.

Three-point seat belt instructions

1. Hold the locking tab and pull the seat belt out of the retractor. Do not twist the seat belt in the process. If you are unable to pull the seat belt out of the retractor, you will need to pull hard the seat belt and then release it. Doing so will trigger the retractor and allow you to pull out the seat belt smoothly.
2. Insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.



3. Pull up the shoulder belt and adjust the lap belt until the lap belt tightly fits the body. In this way, the pelvis can bear the impact, reducing the risk of injury.

4. Check that the shoulder belt is across the chest and the middle of the shoulder tightly. Thus, any impact will be distributed across the upper skeleton.
5. Press the unlock button on the buckle to retract seat belt. After the buckle has been released, hold on the locking tab until the seat belt has been fully retracted. Take care that the locking tab does not knock into other passengers or any nearby objects.

Front seat belt height adjusting



When the seat belt is close to the your neck or has slid down from the your shoulder, you can use the height adjuster for the seat belt to make the necessary adjustments so that the seat belt lies on the centre of your shoulder as much as possible.

- › Raising: push the height adjuster of the seat belt upwards and it will then snap into a new position.

Seat belts

- › Lowering: press the adjustment switch, adjust the seat belt height adjuster to the necessary height, and then release the switch. Ensure that the height adjuster of the seat belt has snapped into place.

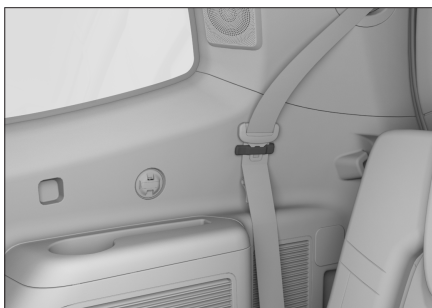
WARNING

After completing the adjustments, please make sure that the seat belt height adjuster has been locked into the appropriate position.

When not using seat belts

4

Safety



3C560024F965

For the vehicles equipped with seat belt fixing clips, when the seat belt is not used, it can be secured on the fixing clip to avoid affecting seat adjustment and backrest folding.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- › Airbags cannot be reused.

Once an airbag has been used, it will not work anymore in the second or subsequent collisions, so be sure to contact authorised service centre for replacement.

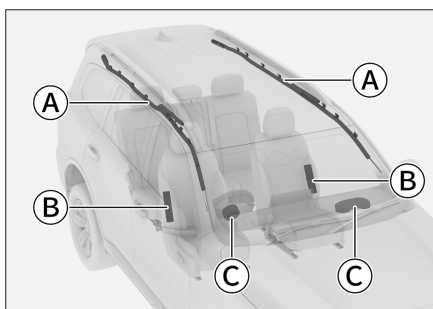
- › The airbags are auxiliary devices to protect the passenger safety and should be used with the seat belts. In order to obtain the effect of airbags, the passengers must wear the seat belts correctly and maintain the correct posture.
- › Proper use of airbags can realize their safety effectiveness to the full. If it is used improperly, it may not play a security role, but may bring harm to passengers.

- › When the airbags are being deployed you will notice some loud sounds and smoke. This is normal and will not lead to a fire. The smoke released, however, may cause breathing difficulty when inhaled by individuals suffering from asthma or other respiratory disease. At this moment, it is safer to flee out of the vehicle immediately. If you are unable to evacuate from the vehicle, open vehicle doors or windows to let fresh air in.
- › When any debris (or gas) released by airbags deployment comes in contact with the eyes or skin, clean such material off using water as soon as possible. Otherwise, individuals with skin hypersensitivity may experience a skin reaction.
- › Do not touch airbag components after the airbag has been deployed. Because its component parts will become very hot, it may cause burns and other major injuries.
- › Please do not use the airbag for any other purposes.
- › Please get in touch with authorised service centre if you need to install radio equipment. Electromagnetic waves emitted by wireless equipment have a significant impact on the airbag control units.
- › It is forbidden to strike or squeeze the airbags and the position around it.

Airbags

Avoid the condition that the airbags cannot work normally during accident or the airbags are accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries to passengers or even death.

Airbags



E9BB3E178994

- Ⓐ Curtain airbag
- Ⓑ Side airbag
- Ⓒ Front airbags include the following types:
 - Driver airbag
 - Front passenger airbag

Front airbags

Overview

The front airbag is located in the steering wheel and the instrument panel in front of the front passenger seat, with the airbag signs on the steering wheel and instrument panel. When the vehicle encounters a strong front impact, the seat belt will be tightened. At the same time, the airbags at the driver side and front passenger side will deploy in order to distribute and cushion any force directed towards the head and chest.

Operating principle

When a head-on collision occurs resulting in moderate or severe impact, the sudden deceleration of the vehicle will be detected by a sensor. At this time, the control device will immediately deploy the airbag.

Precautions

- › The airbag may deploy when the bottom of the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:
 - 1) The vehicle hits the kerb.
 - 2) The vehicle falls into, or runs over a deep pit or drain.
 - 3) The vehicle climbs over the steps and hits or falls on the road.
- › The airbag may deploy when the vehicle rolls over 90° and 180°. However, it will not be able to function to its full capabilities.

- › The airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:

- 1) Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h;
- 2) Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h;

- › If the object suffering impact changes in its shape or moves, the impact force from the collision will be reduced. In this case, the airbag may not deploy.

When the vehicle collides into a truck from the back, if the vehicle runs under the cargo box, as the impact force recognized by the sensor is weak, the airbag may not deploy.

- › The airbag may also not deploy depending on the angle and direction of collision, even when vehicle speed is relatively high.

- › Do not allow your body to get too close to the steering wheel or to the lower part of the instrument panel:

- 1) When driving a vehicle normally, the driver shall stay away from the steering wheel as far as possible while maintaining the correct driving position.
- 2) The front seats shall be as far from the instrument panel as possible.
- 3) All passengers shall fasten seat belts for optimal protection.

- › Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean on the instrument panel while the vehicle is running.

This is because the front airbag deploys at a high speed and with great force. If the passenger is too close to the airbag at this point, he or she may suffer severe injury or even death.

- › Do not allow children to stand in front of the airbag.

When the front airbags deploys, it may cause severe injury or even death to child passengers. All children shall sit on the rear seats and be protected with the correct restraints.

- › Adhere to the following rules; otherwise these items may cause severe injury to passengers during airbag deployment:

- 1) Do not place objects on the instrument panel or lean umbrellas and the like against it.
- 2) Do not leave objects in the storage box exposed.
- 3) Do not hang any objects on vehicle windows or on the interior rear-view mirror.
- 4) Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.
- 5) Do not place luggage, pets or other objects between the airbag and the driver or front passenger.

- › Do not clean the inside of the vehicle with water or cleaning solution.

Airbags

The inflator in airbag is a deployment device. If it becomes damp, the normal operation of airbag will be affected or even serious injury or death will be caused.

- › Do not apply wax, stickers or similar items to the airbag cover.
Failure to adhere to the advice can impede airbag deployment.
- › Do not damage the airbag cover.
Otherwise, it will not work normally. Therefore, be sure not to open or damage the airbag cover.
- › Do not dismantle, modify or install devices such as airbags, instrument panel and steering wheel.

Improper operations can cause the airbag to malfunction or deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.

- › Do not modify the suspension.
If the vehicle height or suspension stiffness is changed, the airbag may deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.
- › Consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to install a guard plate and air deflector at the front of the vehicle.

Modifications to the front of the vehicle can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby triggering accidental deployment of the airbag, which may cause serious injury or even death.

- › Be sure to consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to repair the front of the vehicle or the cab.


Improper repairs can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby leading to airbag malfunctions, which may cause serious injury or even death.


Front passenger side airbag switch



1BC42E4AB9F7

The front passenger side airbag switch is located on the side of the front passenger side instrument panel.

Use a mechanical key to turn the front passenger side airbag switch to OFF position to turn off the front passenger side front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger side airbag OFF warning light  on the reading lamp is on.

Use a mechanical key to turn the front passenger airbag switch to ON position to turn on the front passenger side front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger side airbag ON warning light  on the reading lamp is on.

NOTICE

After inserting the mechanical key, it needs to be pushed hard in the insertion direction, and it can rotate normally.

WARNING

- › Be sure not to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger side seat while the front passenger side airbag is working. Otherwise, a serious accident or even death may occur.
- › If, under special circumstances, it is necessary to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger side seat, be sure to turn off the front passenger side airbag. Otherwise, a serious accident or even death may occur.

In other conditions, do not turn the front passenger side airbag switch to OFF position at will. Otherwise, the front passenger side airbag will not be able to deploy if a serious collision occurs to the vehicle.

Side airbags

Introduction

Side airbags are located inside the seat backrest outside liner, and airbag identification will be made on the seat backrest. Side airbags are the supplement of seat belt. In case of side collision, side airbags will reduce the damages to inside passenger and prevent subsequent collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters impact from the side, the sensor will detect an acute change in vehicle speed and then send a signal to the control module. If airbag work condition is met, the side airbag will be deployed instantaneously. When a side collision occurs, only the side airbag of the side impacted will deploy. If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side of the vehicle, even if there is no one in that seat, the side airbag on front passenger's side will deploy all the same.

Precautions

- › The side airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision.
 - 2) Electronic control unit receives a weak signal of mild side impact.
 - 3) Rear collision.
 - 4) Rollover.

Airbags

- › Do not place any object over side airbags. Otherwise, it will disturb the normal work of the side airbag.
- › Never attach any object around the side airbag deployment area. Failure to adhere to this can cause such objects to dislodge when the side airbags deploy.
- › Do not remove, repair or modify seat with side airbag and parts around the side airbag deployment area.

Warning label



The identification is located on the central pillar. It serves to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with side airbags and to pay attention to the relevant issues.

Curtain airbags

Introduction

The curtain airbags are located on the roof lower edge; you can find airbag marks on pillar. The curtain airbags are a supplement to seat belt. In case of side collision, curtain airbags will reduce the damages to interior passenger and prevent subsequent collisions.

Operating principle

In the event of a side collision, a sensor detects a sharp change in the lateral acceleration of the vehicle and send a signal to the control module. If the curtain airbag work conditions are met, the curtain airbags on the collision side will instantly inflate.

Precautions

- › The curtain airbags may not inflate when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision.
 - 2) Electronic control unit receives a weak signal of mild side impact.
 - 3) Rear collision.
 - 4) Rollover.

- › Please do not remain close to the vehicle doors, door pillars or roof rail, or kneel on a front seat. Otherwise, passengers' heads may suffer a severe impact when the curtain airbag inflates, which may cause serious injuries or even death. Pay attention especially when children are in the vehicle.
- › Never attach any object near where the curtain airbag will inflate. Otherwise, there is a risk that object may launch into the cabin when the curtain airbag inflates.
- › Do not hang heavy or sharp objects on the coat hook.

Please do not use clothes hangers if you wish to hang your clothing, and opt for the coat hook directly instead. Otherwise, the clothes hangers may launch into the cabin when the curtain airbag inflates.

- › Do not remove, repair or modify parts near where the curtain airbag will inflate.

Do not modify roof, roof handrail, roof handrail bracket and side roof lamp.

Child restraint system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety instructions for child seat

Warning label



90A96F30A2E6

This label, which is located on the front passenger side sun visor, is used to alert you that your vehicle is equipped with front airbag. Note the relevant precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use rear-facing child restraint systems on the seats protected by front airbag (activated), which may cause the child suffering from death or serious injury.

- › If the child seat is not installed with child seat fixing device, use the seat belt to install it and then follow the installation instructions provided with the child seat.

- › Properly fasten the child seat inside the vehicle.

If you install the child seat incorrectly, in the event of emergency braking or accident, severe injury or even death may occur.

- › Do not place unsecured child seat protection devices in the vehicle.

If you leave it inside the vehicle, it may come into contact with passengers or other objects in the event of emergency braking or severe impact, causing a severe injury or even death.

- › Even when the child has sat in a child seat, take care that his or her head or body is not leaning against the vehicle door pillar or roof rail.

When the curtain airbag fully deploys, it can be very dangerous in this scenario as the deployment force may cause severe injury or even death to the child.

Child restraint system

- › Depending on the different types of child seat, when installing or removing a child seat, refer to the install instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.
- › It is recommended that children are seated on the rear outboard seating positions, with the appropriate child restraint system. Be sure to leave enough space around the child seat and adjust the seat in front if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

The following instructions must be followed for using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- › When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated. The front passenger airbag must be activated as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is removed.
- › If necessary, adjust the seat backrest angle until there is stable contact between the seat backrest and the child seat.
- › Take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.

- › For Group II and Group III child seats, ensure that the guide device mounted on the child seat headrest are in front of the seat belt anchorage point.

When install a child seat using any passenger seat, take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.

Fixing points for child seat

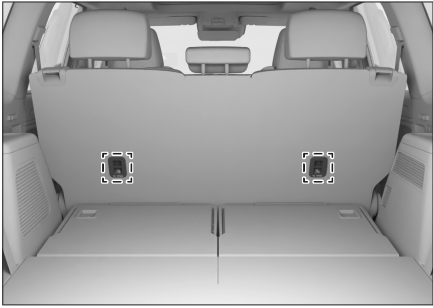
Lower fixing points for child seat



There are 4 lower fixing points for child seat at the gap between the second row seat backrest and the seat cushion. If the lower fixing point decorative cover is installed, remove the decorative cover first when using it.

Child restraint system

Top tether strap fixing point for child seat



There are 2 top tether strap fixing points for child seat at the rear side of the second row seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Fixing points for child seat are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child seat. Under no circumstances shall they be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

i NOTICE

The fixing point diagram of the child seat only shows the fixing point position. The appearance of the fixing point may vary with the vehicle configurations. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Recommended child seat type

ISOFIX is a mounting system for car child seats based on international standards. In the user's country, child seats need to meet the ECE R44 norm. Only child seats that meet the above norm are allowed to be used in vehicles.

Weight group

Group	Weight (kg)	Age
Group 0	Maximum 10	0 to 9 months old
Group 0+	Maximum 13	0 to 2 years old
Group I	9 to 18	9 months to 4 years old
Group II	15 to 25	4 to 7 years old
Group III	22 to 36	6 to 12 years old

Rearward-facing child seat, weight group 0/0+ / I

Forward-facing child seat, weight group I.

Cushioned child seat, weight group II / III.

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Installation method
Group 0+/I	Joie	Spin 360	ISOFIX + support legs

Child restraint system

Group	Manu- facturer	Type	Installa- tion method
Group III	REEBA- BY	Ashe	ISOFIX
	Osann	UP	Seat belts

WARNING

For children weighing no more than 18 kg (3 years old for reference), the child seat must be rearward-facing mounted.

NOTICE

For optimum protection, use the recommended child seat type, including rear and lap belt guides.

Not every child is suitable for choosing a child seat in weight group, and likewise not every child seat is suitable for your vehicle. It is therefore important to check that a child sits properly in the child seat and that the child seat is securely fastened in the vehicle.

Child restraint system

Installation of child seat

When installing a child seat, you must use a child seat that is appropriate for the child's age, weight and size to restrain an infant or a child in the seat.

Applicability information of child seat for different seat positions

Group	Seat position			
	Front passenger seat		Second row seat	
	Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Outside	Middle
Group 0	X	U	U	U
Group 0+	X	U	U	U
Group I	X	U	U	U
Group II	X	U	U	U
Group III	X	U	U	U

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

U - this seat is suitable for universal child restraint system certified under this weight group.

X - this seat is not suitable for use with child restraint systems in this weight group.

Please do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

This places the child passenger too close to the airbag. In the event of airbag deployment this can cause severe injury or even death to the child passenger.

If the child seat must be installed on a front passenger seat under special circumstances, please pay attention to the following points:

- › Please be sure to turn off the front passenger airbag switch, otherwise it will cause serious danger to children when the airbag deploys.(▷ Page 252)
- › When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, please adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

Child restraint system

Applicability information of ISOFIX child seat

Group	Size	Fixing module	ISOFIX position
			Second-row out-side
Portable bed	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
Group 0	E	ISO/R1	IL
Group 0+	E	ISO/R1	IL
	D	ISO/R2	IL
	C	ISO/R3	IL
Group I	D	ISO/R2	IL
	C	ISO/R3	IL
	B	ISO/F2	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

IUF - this seat is suitable for general forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system approved for the weight group;

IL - this seat is suitable for special ISOFIX child restraint system on the list; Such restraint systems may be special, restricted or semi-general.

X - ISOFIX position is not suitable for use with this weight group and/or ISOFIX child restraint system of this size.

Child seat installed with the seat belt

1. When a child seat is installed on the front seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the interior trim), the front seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
2. When a child seat is installed on the second-row seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the front seat), the front seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
3. If necessary, adjust or remove the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.

Child restraint system

4. Pull out the shoulder belt, move the belt along the indicated route on the child seat and insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
5. With your body weight pressing down on the child seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract and tighten. There must be no signs of slack to the shoulder belt.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

CAUTION

If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

Child seats installed with the child seat fixing device

1. When a child seat is installed on the second-row seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the front seat), the front seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
2. If necessary, adjust or remove the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
3. Slide the child seat lock mechanism into the lower fixing point, and ensure that the two ISOFIX lock mechanisms are securely fixed.
4. When fixing the top tether strap, refer to the instruction manual of the child seat.
5. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

CAUTION

If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

WARNING

- › If the child seat is equipped with a top tether strap, tighten the top tether strap according to the installation instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.

Otherwise, severe injury or even death may be caused in the event of emergency braking or collision.

Child restraint system

- › Do not lower the headrest after fastening the child seat top tether strap to its fixing point.

Otherwise, it may come into contact with the top tether strap and loosen the strap as a result. In the event of emergency braking or collision, this can cause the child seat to turn, bringing severe injuries or even death.

Vehicle anti-theft system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System introduction

The vehicle anti-theft system helps to keep your vehicle and valuables from being stolen. The vehicle anti-theft system will emit audible and visual alarm if someone tries to enter the vehicle by force.

WARNING

Do not attempt to modify the vehicle anti-theft system.

Instructions

System activation

After the door is successfully locked from outside, the hazard warning lights will flash once (or the horn sounds) and the vehicle enters the pre-arm mode.

In the pre-arm mode, you can still operate the vehicle without triggering the alarm.

After the pre-arm state lasts for about 15 seconds, the vehicle will automatically enter the armed state and the vehicle anti-theft function will be activated.

CAUTION

Please check whether all the doors, the tailgate and the hood are completely closed. Otherwise, the vehicle anti-theft system will not be activated.

NOTICE

The central control button will fail in the armed and anti-theft state of the vehicle.

System off

If the vehicle door is unlocked from outside (except for the mechanical key), the hazard warning lights will flash twice, and the vehicle anti-theft function will be deactivated.

Alarm trigger condition

- › The door is unlocked with a mechanical key.
- › A door or the tailgate is forcibly opened.
- › The hood is open.

Alarm cancellation

- › Switch the power supply mode to ON.
- › Start the vehicle successfully.

Vehicle anti-theft system

- › The power supply is in the OFF mode, and the door is successfully unlocked from outside (except for the mechanical key).

Emergency shut-off system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Emergency shut-off system

When the impact sensor detects a certain degree of impact, the system will cut off the high voltage current and fuel supply, and minimize the danger caused by electric shock and fuel leakage.

If the emergency cut-off system is activated, the vehicle cannot be restarted. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

Event data recorder

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System introduction

The vehicle is equipped with the event data recorder (EDR).

The event data recorder (EDR) is mainly used to record data related to vehicle dynamic system and safety system when a vehicle collision happens in order to help understand the operation conditions of vehicle system. However, since collision severity and type vary, EDR may not record the data.

i NOTICE

EDR records data only when a vehicle meets a major collision. When the vehicle runs normally, EDR does not record data.

Data reading

Except the vehicle manufacturer, other parties (such as law enforcement agencies) can read the data recorded in EDR after connecting the laptop with the on-board diagnostic interface to enter the EDR by using CANoe equipment.

The data reading equipment can be purchased from CANoe software vendors.

The data items recorded by EDR and their uses are as follows:

Data item	Applications
Braking state	Record the brake pedal status during collision
Speed during collision	Record the speed at the time of collision
Status of the seat belt lock body	Record the safety belt status during collision
Status of the airbag system warning lamp	Record whether the airbag failure warning lamp is on before collision

Data disclosure

Any data recorded by EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following circumstances:

- › With the consent of the vehicle owner or lessee.

Event data recorder

- › To be used in a lawsuit at the official request of the police, court, or government department.

However, if necessary, the data recorded by the EDR will be used to:

- › Research and develop the vehicle safety performance.
- › For R&D purpose, data is disclosed to the third parties without disclosing specific information about the owners and their vehicles.

5

Emergency

On-board tools.....	270
Vehicle lifting.....	272
Spare tyre	273
Replacing the spare tyre.....	276
In case of a vehicle accident	281
Jump start	285
Engine overheating	287
Towing.....	289
Emergency rescue system...	293

On-board tools

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Location of toolkit

Reflective vest and on-board document packages are placed in the storage box of the front passenger side instrument panel.

Triangle warning signs, on-board tool-kits, etc. are placed under the luggage area cover, and you can see it by opening the cover.

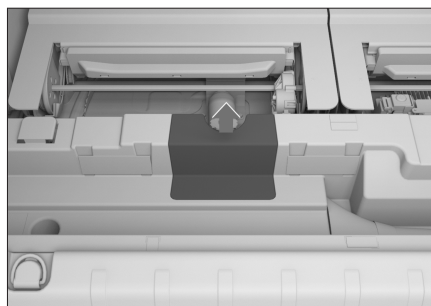
The jack is placed under the third row of seats. Fold the third row seats first, and then take and place the jack as follows:

1. Turn the fixing knobs on both sides of the luggage area cover clockwise to remove the cover.



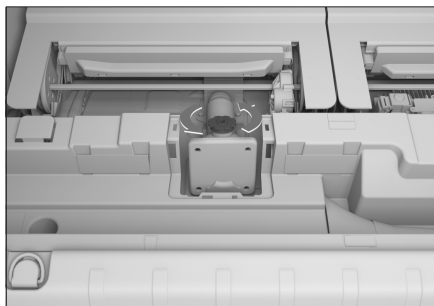
7682790A806A

2. Remove the jack cover. Pay attention to the fastener position on the cover plate when removing it. Do not remove it violently. Otherwise, the fastener may be damaged.



2216AA36FBAF

3. Turn the jack adjustment knob counterclockwise until the jack can be removed from the fixing bracket.



9BFA1509858F

4. After using the jack, return the jack to its original position in the reverse order of removal, and make sure that it is securely fixed.

CAUTION

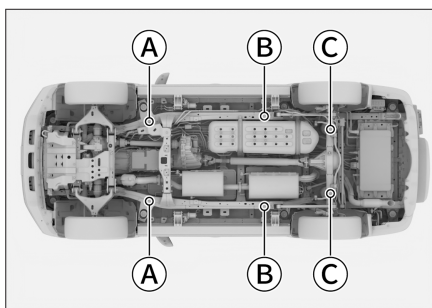
- › The driver must be familiar with the storage location and instructions of the on-board toolkit in order to cope with emergency.
- › And the driver must return the on-board toolkit to their designated positions after use, and fix them securely. Random placement may cause accidents.
- › The jack provided with the vehicle is a special tool for this vehicle. Do not apply this jack to other vehicles, and do not apply the jacks designed for other vehicles to your vehicle.

Vehicle lifting

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle lifting position



Ⓐ Lifter/Jack lifting position

Ⓑ Lifter lifting position

Ⓒ Jack lifting position

The vehicle lifting position is shown in the above figure.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not operate a vehicle that is not properly supported, as this may cause serious damage, personal injury, or death.

- If the vehicle needs to be lifted, the lifting tool must be placed against the lifting point. Lifting at any other point may cause damage to the vehicle or cause accidents.
- When using a lifting tool to lift the vehicle, do not place any part of your body under the vehicle to avoid injury.

⚠ CAUTION

When placing the jack, be careful not to bump into the pipeline. Otherwise, the pipeline leakage may be caused to damage the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

For models equipped with electric side steps, pay attention to the following:

- The electric side steps cannot bear the weight of the vehicle body, and it is strictly forbidden to lift the vehicle at the electric side steps.
- When lifting the vehicle, keep the electric side steps retracted. Before lifting the vehicle, turn off the electric side steps through the multimedia display screen to avoid unfolding the electric side steps by mistake.

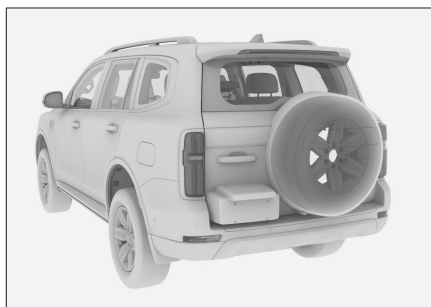
Spare tyre

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Spare tyre introduction

The spare tyre is hung on the tailgate and its position is shown in the figure.



581C261949D3

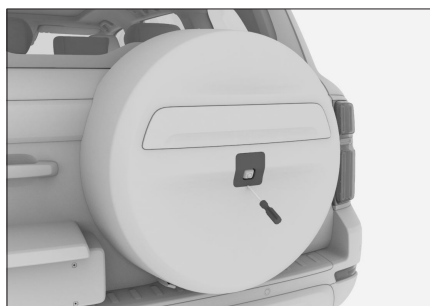
CAUTION

- › Due to low frequency of use and less friction with the ground, friction coefficients of four tyres will be slightly different after the spare tyre is put on, so drive carefully. It is recommended that you repair the standard tyre as soon as possible and replace the spare tyre.

- › Regularly check the state of the spare tyre such as tyre pressure, cracks and bulges, etc., to ensure that the spare tyre is available for use in case of a failure.

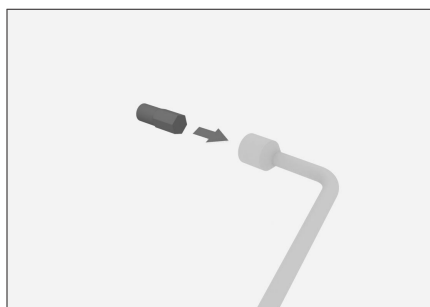
Removing and restoring

1. Close the tailgate and use a flathead screwdriver wrapped with cloth to open the cover plate on the spare tyre cover.



009758BEAFBE

2. Install the spare tyre nut wrench into the wheel nut wrench.



8533BB69AEED

5

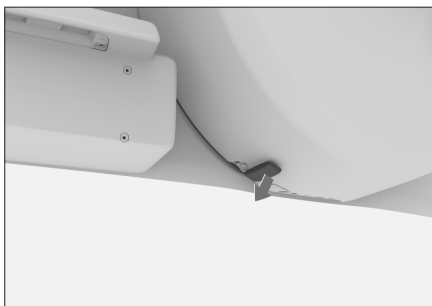
Emergency

Spare tyre

- Using the assembled wheel nut wrench, unscrew the bolt under the cover plate counterclockwise, and remove it.



- Remove the spare tyre cover.



Open the tailgate and release the locking lever at the bottom of the spare tyre cover. Pry open the rear clip along the edge of the spare tyre cover, and then remove the spare tyre cover.

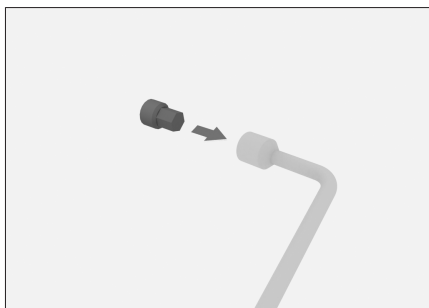
Ensure that you place the spare tyre cover face upwards when putting it on the ground to avoid scratching its surface.

- Close the tailgate, insert the spare tyre lock cylinder with the mechanical key and pull out the spare tyre lock cylinder.

For how to get the mechanical key, see the Removing the Mechanical Key.(▷ Page 20)



- Install the removal socket into the wheel nut wrench.



Spare tyre

7. Using the assembled wheel nut wrench, loosen the nut at the spare tyre lock cylinder counterclockwise and remove it.



FC51B110033E

i NOTICE

When putting the spare tyre back, hold the lock cylinder by hand to remove the key after the spare tyre lock cylinder is installed; otherwise the key will get stuck when being removed and re-inserted.

8. Use a wheel nut wrench to loosen and remove the spare tyre fixing nut counterclockwise, and then remove the spare tyre.



923208C1C4B2

Ensure that you place the spare tyre with its exterior upwards when putting it on the ground to avoid scratching its surface.

9. Put the spare tyre back in the reverse order of removal.

5

Emergency

Replacing the spare tyre

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre failure symptom

When any of the following situations occur, check if the tyres are punctured or have gone flat:

- › The steering wheel shakes.
- › The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- › The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

CAUTION

- › If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently step on the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or sudden steering is prohibited. Otherwise, it may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

- › If there is a flat tyre, replace with the spare tyre immediately. Continuing driving with a flat tyre for any reason can cause instability in your drive and lead to an accident. In addition, doing so can cause damage to rims, wheels, the suspension and the vehicle body.

Preparation for spare tyre replacement

1. All passengers must exit the vehicle.
2. Park the vehicle at a hard, flat place where it will not impede the normal flow of traffic and where you will be able to work safely.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Shut down the vehicle.
shift to P gear and shut down the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not lift the vehicle with the jack when the gear is in N. Otherwise, the jack will not be able to stably support the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

5. Turn on the emergency flashers and place the warning triangle.
6. Prepare the spare tyre, the jack, the jack adjustment lever, the wheel nut wrench and the wheel chock.

CAUTION

- › You need to use the wheel chock together with the jack.

Replacing the spare tyre

- › The wheel chock can be purchased at authorised service centre. Please contact the authorised service centre for the relevant details.
- › If you do not have a wheel chock handy, you can use a piece of rock large enough to stabilize the tyre instead.

Method to replace the spare tyre

Removal of the defective tyre

1. Secure the tyre.

Be sure to use suitable tyre chock against the tyre, and place the tyre chocks on both sides of the tyre in the diagonal direction of the tyre to be replaced.

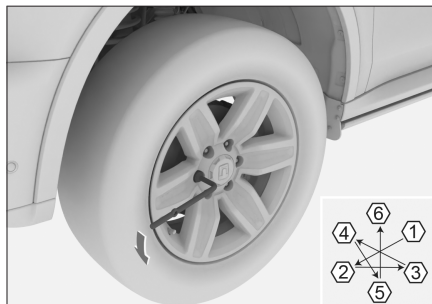
2. Remove the wheel nut trim cover.



DF429D075258

For vehicles equipped with wheel nut trim covers, use the wheel nut trim cover removal tool supplied with the vehicle to remove the wheel nut trim covers in turn.

3. Loosen the nuts.



02BCB7901DF3

Loosen the nut slightly counterclockwise (approx. 1 turn) in the order shown using the wheel nut wrench.

4. Place the jack under the lifting position and adjust the jack position and height to ensure that the jack is stably held in the lifting position.

For lifting position, see "Vehicle lifting". (▷ Page 272)

⚠ CAUTION

When placing the jack, be careful not to bump into the pipeline. Otherwise, the pipeline leakage may be caused to damage the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

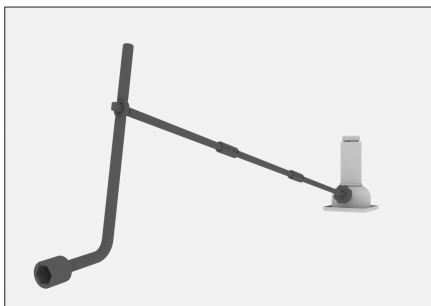
You must observe the followings when using the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may shift, resulting in serious injury:

- › Shut down the vehicle.
- › Do not use the jack when there are passengers inside the vehicle.

Replacing the spare tyre

- › The jack must be placed on a flat, hard ground.
- › Do not place any objects on the top or bottom of the jack.
- › The jack should be lifted to a height at which the tyre can be changed.
- › After lifting the vehicle by the jack, do not enter under the vehicle.
- › When lowering the vehicle, pay attention to the surroundings to avoid injury to the operator and other individuals.

5. Install the spare tyre lifter rocker.



41079A7B8631

Combine the front, middle and rear sections of spare tyre lifter rocker with the wheel nut wrench into the form as shown in the figure. Then, insert the spare tyre lifter rocker into the jack end hole.

6. Raise the vehicle.

Turn the combination tool clockwise to bring the tyre slightly off the ground.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When using the jack, you should ensure that the jack adjustment lever should be coaxial with the rotation centre of the jack screw.
- › During operation, you should first lift the vehicle up slightly. Carefully check whether everything is normal, and then continue raising the vehicle.

7. Remove all fixing nuts and remove the tyre.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When placing the tyre on the ground, keep the spokes facing upwards to avoid damage.
- › Before installing the spare tyre, it is best to place the removed tyre at the bottom of the vehicle to avoid the displacement of the jack, causing an accident.

Installation of the spare tyre

1. Remove any foreign object from the wheel mounting surface.

Before installing the spare tyre, remove the foreign object from the wheel mounting surface; otherwise the wheel nut may loosen during the driving process, thus causing the wheel disengagement.

Replacing the spare tyre

⚠ WARNING

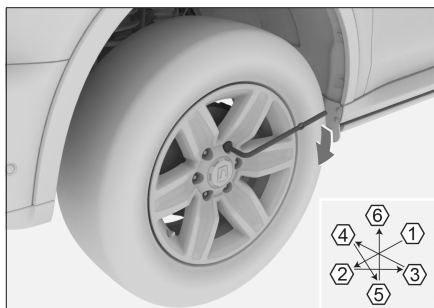
Take care to avoid burns while wiping, as the brake disc may be hot due to driving.

2. Install the spare tyre and tighten the nuts with approximately the same force, and make sure that the nut is in full contact with the wheel mounting surface.
3. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack counterclockwise.

⚠ WARNING

When lowering the vehicle, you must pay attention to the surroundings to avoid injury to the operator and other individuals.

4. Tighten the wheel nuts 2 to 3 times in the order indicated in the figure.



06AD6F44BEA9

Tightening torque: 120 ± 10 N·m

i NOTICE

After replacing the spare tyre, tighten the nut to the tightening torque as soon as possible using a torque wrench. Otherwise the wheel nut is easy to be loose or fall off, which may lead to serious casualties.

5. For vehicles equipped with wheel nut trim covers, install the wheel nut trim covers.
6. Put the defective tyre in where the spare tyre is placed and fix it. Put all the tools into specified place and secure them.

⚠ WARNING

Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please send it to the authorised service centre for treatment.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use damaged, cracked or deformed nuts and wheels.
- › Fix the nuts when using the wheel nut wrench; otherwise, the nuts are likely to be disengaged while screwed, resulting in personal injury.
- › Do not step on the wheel nut wrench or use other tools to over-tighten the nuts. Otherwise, the wheel nuts may be damaged.

Replacing the spare tyre

- › When installing nuts, do not apply any lubricant or grease. If the nuts are screwed excessively, the nuts and the wheels are likely to be damaged; if the nuts are loosened, the wheels are likely to be disengaged during driving, resulting in an accident.

In case of a vehicle accident

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Traffic incidents occur to the vehicle

When the vehicle is forced to stop on road because of traffic incidents or vehicle breakdown, in order to warn other vehicles, take the following measures:

- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Place the warning triangle behind your vehicle in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury and death when a traffic accident occurs, please observe the following precautions:

- › If bare wires are detected inside or outside vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.

- › Do not touch the high-voltage components, orange high-voltage cables and their connectors. Otherwise, serious injuries or death caused by electric shock may occur.
- › If there is a liquid leakage, do not touch such liquid. It may be a liquid leaking from the traction battery pack. If the skin or eyes are inadvertently exposed to the liquid, rinse with plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately to avoid further injury.
- › If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a potential fire risk. In this case, place the vehicle in a safe area for monitoring to prevent fire.
- › If you are not sure whether the vehicle is damaged or safe, stay away from the vehicle as soon as possible.
- › When an accident causes a fire on the vehicle, use a special fire extinguisher for electrical fires to extinguish the fire. Use of water or improper fire extinguishers may result in serious injuries or death due to electric shock.

In case of a vehicle accident

In case of a fire accident to the vehicle

If heavy smoke emits from the vehicle or a fire accident occurs, you shall pull over to a sparsely populated place immediately, turn off the power (ignition) supply switch, and evacuate passengers away from the vehicle quickly. Under the condition of ensuring personal safety, perform the following operations:

- › Call the police according to the on-site situation.
- › If you can confirm that the fire is small and does not involve a high-voltage system, you can try to use a vehicle fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire in time; if the fire is large or the origin of fire is near the power battery, immediately move away from the vehicle and stand at the upwind position, and notify the firefighters immediately. Do not use water to extinguish the fire by yourself to prevent the risk of electric shock.
- › Anyone inhaling heavy smoke accidentally should be transferred for medical attention as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- › The burning of lithium batteries will produce high temperature and harmful gases, so please stay away from the burning vehicle as much as possible.

- › Please do not touch any liquid leaked from the power battery. In case of contact with skin or eyes accidentally, please rinse it immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice in time to avoid further injury.
- › If firefighters use water to extinguish the fire, please do not touch the water on the ground to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- › Due to the possibility of reburning of the lithium battery, even if the open fire is extinguished, do not approach the vehicle rashly and note whether the vehicle still has heavy smoke or open fire.

How to prevent fires

Fire accidents pose a serious threat to your life and property. Make sure to follow the methods below to prevent fire accidents:

- › Do not store flammable and explosive substances in the vehicle.

During the hot season when the sun is shining, the interior of the vehicle is very hot, and if flammable and explosive items such as lighters, perfume and alcohol are stored in the vehicle, they can easily cause a fire or even an explosion.
- › Do not leave a clear bottle with unfinished water in the vehicle.

In case of a vehicle accident

When exposed to the sun, especially in the hot season, a clear water bottle resembles a convex lens, and the converging sunlight can easily cause burns to the interiors of the vehicle or even cause a fire.

- › Do not dispose of cigarette butts at will.
Stub out cigarette butts and properly dispose of them.
- › Do not modify the vehicle wiring or install additional electrical appliances.
The addition of other high-powered electrical appliances (lights, speakers, etc.) can cause an excessive load on the wiring, which can easily lead to overheating and even a fire. Do not use fuses of different colours or amperage or replace fuses with other metal wires.
- › Always carry a fire extinguisher on your vehicle and know how to use it.
Check and replace the fire extinguisher on a regular basis to ensure its reliability.
- › Visit the authorised service centre on schedule for inspection and maintenance.

In case of vehicle immersion accident

To avoid vehicle immersion, we suggest that when the early warning is issued for rainstorms, floods and other severe conditions, the vehicle can be parked on higher terrain in advance, not the low-lying parking lots and underground garages with unreasonable design.

When the vehicle is partially or completely immersed in water, the vehicle will not have a greater risk of electric shock due to immersion in water, provided that the body and chassis are not damaged. However, professional rescue personnel must still wear the necessary personal protective equipment to handle flooded vehicles. After the vehicle is removed from the water, the battery safety switch should be disconnected in time.

WARNING

Handling a flooded vehicle without the necessary personal protective equipment may result in serious personal injury or death.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out

When driving in snow, mud and sand, the vehicle is easy to get stuck or bottom out. Therefore, you should drive carefully.

In case of a vehicle accident

If the vehicle gets stuck, you can try the following operations:

1. Turn off the power supply switch and apply the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand around the stuck tyres.
3. Place wood blocks, stones or other materials to help improve the tyre adhesion.
4. Restart the vehicle.
5. Release the parking brake. Be careful to accelerate and get the vehicle out of the pit.

WARNING

While freeing the vehicle, pay attention to the following:

- › Make sure that the surrounding area is clear and free from any other vehicles, objects, or persons.
- › When the vehicle gets out from the pit, it will suddenly rush forwards or backwards. Please be careful.
- › When getting out of mud or snow, pay attention to whether there are larger objects such as stones in the mud or snow. Please clean them up timely to prevent damage to the vehicle body and sensors during getting out.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out, please contact professional rescue teams or call the customer service hot-line if the vehicle cannot get out of the trap in the methods above. Dragging unprofessionally for rescue is prohibited.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions during rescue to avoid potential vehicle damage and ensure personal safety.

1. When using a tow hook for towing, securely fasten a recovery blanket in the middle of the tow rope. This precaution prevents the tow hook or rope from breaking and rebounding, thus averting potential vehicle damage and ensuring personal safety.
2. Never drag the vehicle from the side or vertically, with the best angle of tow hook within the range of 5° up and down and 25° left and right.
3. Never drag the vehicle during launch start. The initial towing speed should not exceed 5 km/h (start off slowly until the tow rope is taut).
4. When using a tow hook for towing, ensure that the drag or towing force does not surpass the weight of the vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery

- › The vehicle cannot be started.
- › Headlamps are darker than normal.
- › The horn cannot give a sound or the sound is weak.

Jump starting the vehicle

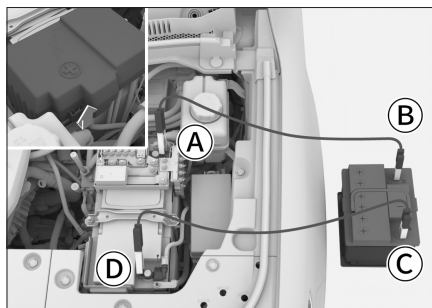
If you cannot start the vehicle due to undervoltage battery, you can connect the battery of another vehicle by a jumper cable to start the vehicle.

The wire cross-section of jumper cable is no less than 25 mm².

⚠ CAUTION

- › Not all vehicle batteries can be used. The jump start can only be performed with a battery having a rated voltage of 12 V.
- › Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

1. Connect the booster cables in the following order.



C982A6878BDB

- (A) Positive terminal on vehicle with undervoltage battery ⊕
When connecting, open the protective cover on the positive terminal of the battery first.
 - (B) Positive terminal on battery for rescue vehicle ⊕
 - (C) Negative terminal on battery for rescue vehicle ⊖
 - (D) Negative terminal on vehicle with undervoltage battery ⊖
2. Recharge the battery.
Start the rescue vehicle, increase the engine speed slightly, and keep such speed for about 5 minutes to temporarily charge the depleted battery of the vehicle.
3. Start the vehicle with undervoltage battery.
If you still cannot start the vehicle, check whether the jumper cables have been connected correctly, then charge the battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable.

Jump start

Once the vehicle is started, remove the jumper cable in an order contrary to the connection.

WARNING

- › During charging or jump start, gas may escape from the battery. There is a risk of explosion. Be sure to keep the battery away from sparks, open flames and other flammable materials.
- › Battery fluid is corrosive, and it can cause serious injury to eyes and skin. In case of accidental contact, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.
- › When connecting or removing jumper cables, do not wind the cables with fans, belts and the like.
- › Ensure that all cables are connected correctly, and keep a certain distance between their ends to avoid contact between positive and negative terminals.

CAUTION

If a battery is often undervoltage, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

Engine overheating

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Engine overheating

Preventing from overheating

The off-road thermal management mode can be turned on or off via the **【Car】** → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The engine is prone to overheating when running under high load for a long period of time. Turning on the off-road thermal management mode allows the engine cooling to be switched on earlier to prevent or mitigate engine overheating.

Overheating symptoms

i NOTICE

Under extreme conditions (such as dragging, towing, climbing, overloading, etc.), the engine may overheat and the power of the whole vehicle will decrease.

- › The water temperature indicator is in the red zone.
- › Engine accelerates weakly.
- › There is steam emanating from the hood.
- › A/C compressor may stop working automatically.

Handling methods

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the A/C system and then shut down the engine.
2. Check whether there is steam coming from the engine hood.
 - › If there is no steam, you can open the engine hood.
 - › If there is steam, wait until there is no more steam, then open up the engine hood.
3. Check the coolant level.
Add the coolant if the coolant level is too low.

Engine overheating

Check for pipeline leakage; if there is any leakage, contact the authorised service centre.

4. Check whether there is any foreign object in the core of the radiator.

If there is any foreign object, remove it.

5. Start the vehicle and check whether the cooling fan is running. (Confirm if the fan is running by checking the sound and airflow.)

- › If the fan is not working, shut down the engine and contact the authorised service centre.
- › Please head to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection.

WARNING

- › Do not open the engine hood immediately if you see steam emanating from the engine hood. Doing so may cause serious injury such as burns.
- › When the temperature of radiator is high, do not open the cover of the overflow tank. Otherwise, overflowing steam or coolant may cause severe injuries such as burns.
- › When opening the cover of the overflow tank, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Also, open the cover slowly after covering it with a piece of cloth.
- › When the engine is running, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Otherwise, there is a risk of your hands or clothing becoming caught within and of severe injury as a result.
- › Do not add coolant when the engine is overheated. If a coolant is suddenly added, it is easy to damage the engine. Add a coolant after the engine is completely cooled.

CAUTION

If the water temperature indicator comes to the red warning range again during driving, head to your nearest authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

Towing

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

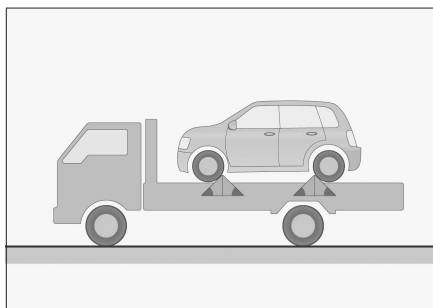
Towing with a professional vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Traction must comply with local regulations regarding trailer towing.

When the vehicle needs to be towed, we suggest an elevating truck or flat truck, and you shall entrust a authorised service centre or a specialized towing company with the traction.

Towing with the flatbed truck

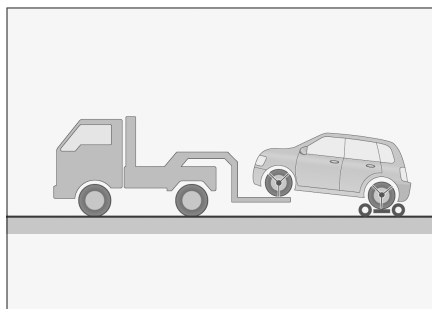


04FD77FA04F8

When using a flatbed truck, you must lock the vehicle firmly.

Towing with the lift truck

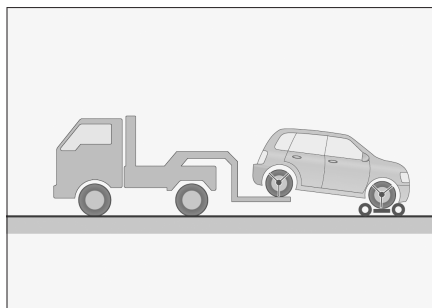
Towing from the front



0AF8FFF4F031

Place the tow truck under the rear wheel and lock firmly.

Towing from the rear



FFEE0CD03B9B

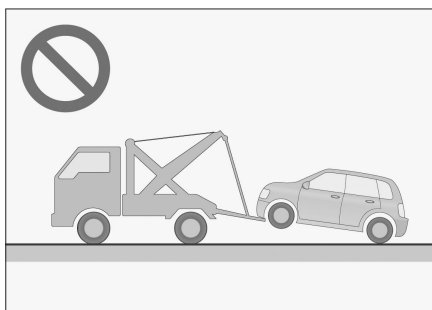
Place the tow truck under the front wheel and lock firmly.

5

Emergency

Towing

Towing with the hoisting type truck is prohibited



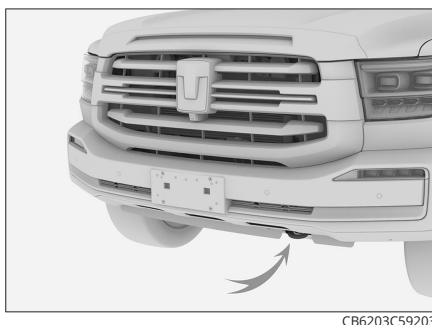
It is forbidden to use a hoisting type truck for towing, otherwise it may damage the vehicle body.

⚠ CAUTION

For a 4WD or RWD vehicle, please use a flat truck or a towing trolley during their traction. Traction with two wheels on the ground is forbidden; otherwise, the vehicle will be seriously damaged.

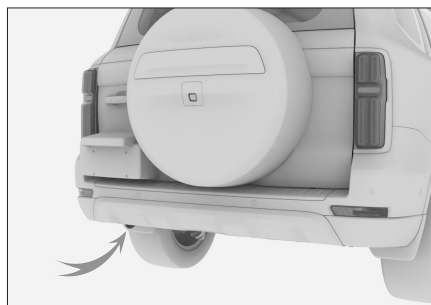
Tow hook

Front tow hook



The front tow hook is located in the area of the front end of the chassis.

Rear tow hook



The rear tow hook is located in the area of the rear end of the chassis.

Tow rope

The tow rope should be elastic to protect vehicles. It is recommended to use an artificial fibre rope or the rope made of similar elastic materials.

The tow rope can only be installed on the designated tow hook or towing ring of the vehicle.

When installing the tow rope, you should be careful not to damage the vehicle body. The distance between the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle should be within 4 to 10 m.

A recovery blanket should be attached to the centre of the tow rope. For towing at night, a tow rope with reflective materials should be used as much as possible to increase the warning effect.

⚠ CAUTION

- › You need to purchase the tow rope by yourself.

- › Do not use a steel rope to tow as that will damage the bumper.

Vehicle fault

When the vehicle fails, if you cannot use a professional vehicle to tow your vehicle, you can use a trailer hook to tow the vehicle temporarily. This towing method can only be used to tow a vehicle on hard pavement in a short distance at low speed.

WARNING

When towing, you must comply with local regulations regarding trailer towing.

Towing the vehicle

For towing the vehicle, the driver must sit in the vehicle and operate the steering wheel and brake pedal, with the wheels, axles, steering system, brake system, transmission system (transmission, etc.) and lighting system (turn signal light and brake light) in good condition.

The detailed methods are as follows:

1. Start the vehicle and shift to the N gear position.
If the vehicle cannot be started, switch the power supply mode to ON. For automatic transmission vehicles, the shift lever emergency unlocking device can be used to switch to the N gear position.(▷ Page 128)

For four-wheel drive vehicles, the drive mode needs to be set to ECO mode or standard mode.

CAUTION

- › When you cannot switch the transmission to the N gear position, do not use tow hooks for towing.
- › The use of towing hooks to tow vehicles is prohibited in other modes except the ECO mode and the standard mode.

2. Turn on the hazard warning light, release the parking brake and wait for towing.

The towing speed is not greater than 50 km/h and the towing distance is not greater than 50 km.

CAUTION

- › If the vehicle is not started, the assist system will not work, and the steering and braking operations will be difficult. The vehicle speed shall be reduced as much as possible during towing.
- › During towing, pay attention to the brake lights of the vehicle in front to avoid looseness of the tow rope.
- › When the vehicle moves on a long downhill road, ropes shall not be used to tow the vehicle.
- › Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

Towing

Towing other faulty vehicles

1. Turn on the emergency flasher when towing, but comply with relevant local laws and regulations.
2. Start driving slowly until the tow rope is tight, and then accelerate carefully.

CAUTION

- › Do not tow a vehicle heavier than the towing vehicle; otherwise, the vehicle can be easily damaged.
- › Avoid sudden start or unstable driving operation; otherwise, the trailer hook or tow rope will be subjected to excessive tension.
- › When the vehicle moves on a long downhill road, ropes shall not be used to tow the vehicle.
- › Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

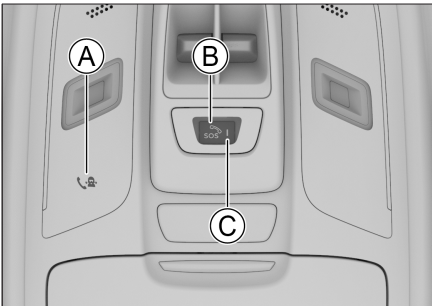
Emergency rescue system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Buttons introduction

Buttons and indicators are located on the reading lamp panel.



- Ⓐ Service call button (📞)
- Ⓑ Emergency rescue button (sos)
- Ⓒ IOV (Internet Of Vehicles) function indicator light

Press the cover to open it and you can operate the emergency rescue button.

⚠ WARNING

When you do not need to operate the emergency rescue button, please close the cover.

ℹ NOTICE

- › This communication device conforms to standards or technical requirements of NBTC.
- › The electromagnetic field intensity of this communication device conforms to Safety Standard for People to Use Communication Device Healthily published by National Telecommunications Commission.

Service call

Press and hold the service call button 📞 to trigger a call for service.

The service call allows you to search for destinations and points of interest, consult information, book a service, consult IOV questions, ask for roadside assistance, etc.

During a call, press and hold the service call button 📞 to end a call for service.

Emergency rescue

Press and hold the emergency rescue button sos to activate emergency rescue call. Press and hold this button again during the call to end the emergency rescue call.

Emergency rescue system

When the collision occurs (the airbag deploys), the emergency rescue call will be automatically triggered. And you cannot manually stop it when calling.

After the emergency rescue call is triggered, the rescue centre will accept the vehicle's rescue request as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Avoid to trigger the emergency rescue call arbitrarily and frequently.

CAUTION

Under the influence of many factors, the emergency rescue call will not work in following situations (including but not limited to):

- › If the IOV system is failed or damaged, the emergency rescue call will not be activated.
- › When the audio devices are damaged, and the wiring harness connecting the IOV system and audio device is damaged or falsely connected, it will be impossible to make a normal rescue call with customer service.
- › The airbag is not deployed in slight collision or other abnormal situations, the rescue call cannot be triggered automatically. At this point, you can make emergency rescue call through triggering it manually or other ways.

- › The emergency rescue call will not be manually activated if the emergency rescue button is damaged.
- › The emergency rescue call will not be activated under the condition of weak signal of mobile network (mobile phone signal), disturbance, shield and so on.
- › When the GPS device is damaged or in weak signal area (such as underground garage, tunnel or mountain area), the vehicle position cannot be located.
- › After the vehicle is powered off, the emergency rescue call will not be activated.
- › The emergency rescue call cannot be used due to force majeure factors such as riot, fire, flood, storm, explosion, war, government action, judicial administrative department command, and social environment.
- › Emergency rescue service is not available due to viruses, Trojan horses or other malicious programs contained in other software you have downloaded and installed or other websites you have visited that threaten the security of your device and data.
- › Other objective factors lead to the unavailability of emergency rescue calls.

Emergency rescue system

Car networking function indicator lights

Status of indicator light	Description
OFF	The car networking system has no network connection (for example, the SIM card used is not registered or cannot be connected to the network).
Orange lamp normally on	Disconnect the battery and re-connect it, indicating that the car networking system is starting.
Orange lamp flashing	During the starting of the car networking system, it is in a call state.
Green lamp normally on	The car networking system works normally and has normal network connection.
Green light flash	The car networking system is in a call state.
Red lamp normally on	The car networking system fails to pass the self-inspection and is in an error state.

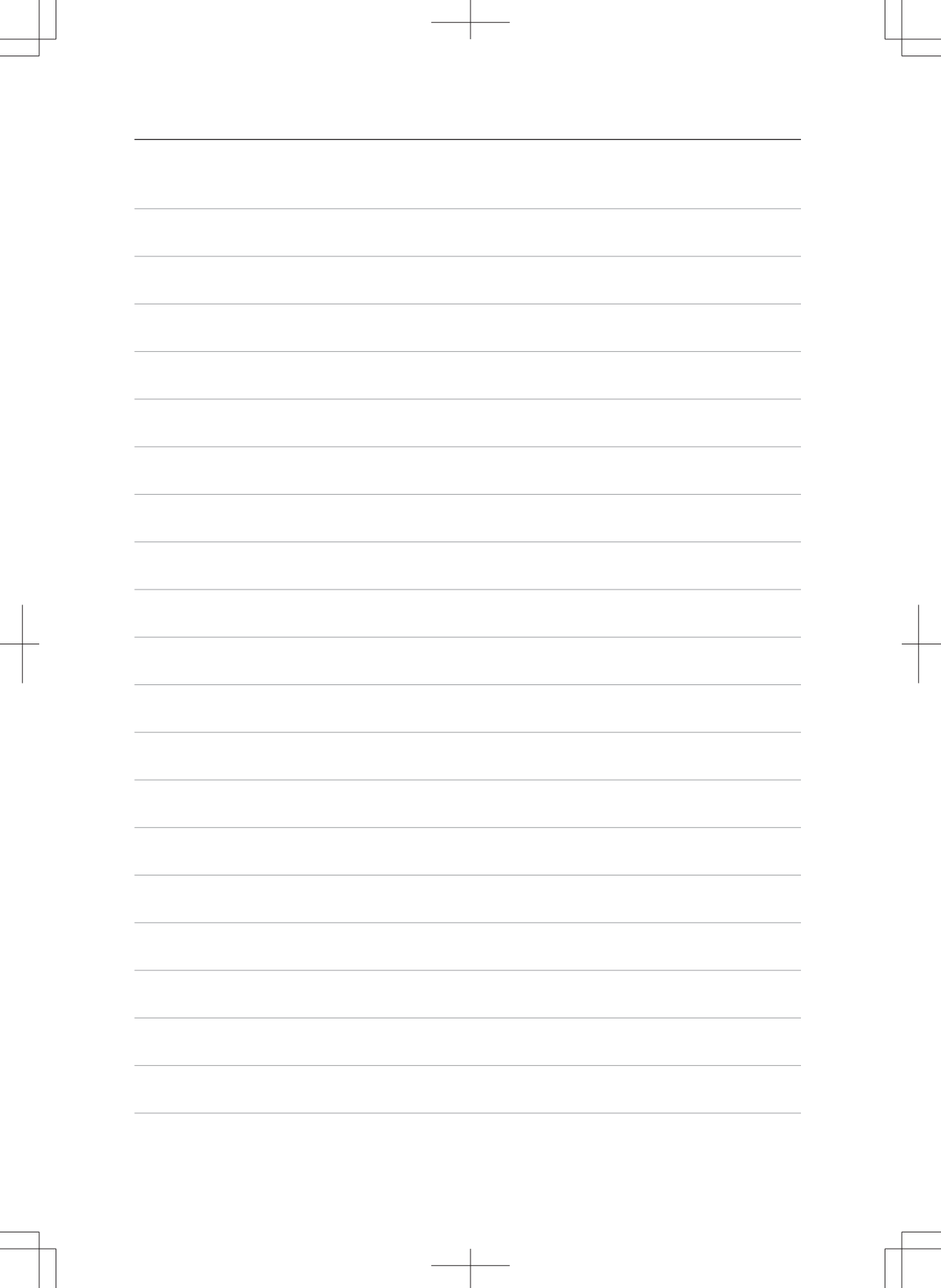
WARNING

It is forbidden to modify the car networking system.

NOTICE

Please observe the following suggestions during daily use:

- › Regularly check whether the car networking system is running normally. The indicator light of the car networking system is green, indicating that the system is normal. If there is a fault, please go to the service station for inspection and maintenance in time.
- › It is recommended to replace the built-in battery of the car networking equipment once every 3 years at most. Please go to the service station to replace the battery in time.



6

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance	298
Engine compartment	299
Safety labels and signs.....	305
Part replacement.....	307
Vehicle maintenance.....	312

Necessity of vehicle maintenance

Vehicle maintenance, a health diagnosis of the vehicle, can reduce the trouble of repairing the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in use, its components and parts will inevitably wear out. To ensure safe driving conditions, regular inspections, maintenance, and repairs are required to maintain and restore vehicle performance.

Vehicle maintenance making you drive more safely

During the maintenance, you can carry out necessary preventive maintenance according to the use of the components and parts, so that you can safely drive the vehicle before the next maintenance.

Extending the service life of the vehicle and reducing the use cost of the vehicle

Components and parts such as brake linings and tyres, etc. cannot be used permanently, as they will gradually wear out while in use. Use of components and parts that exceed the wear limit is likely to cause vehicle breakdown and even lead to traffic accidents. Therefore, it is necessary to conduct regular maintenance.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

WARNING

- › The engine compartment is a hazardous area for operation and must be handled with extreme caution!
- › To avoid personal injury, do not touch high-voltage components, cables and connectors.
- › Never carry out relevant inspection work when the vehicle is started, because rotating parts (such as radiator fans), high-voltage components, power systems, etc. may lead to other dangers.
- › When performing oils inspection and filling operations, observe the following requirements; otherwise burns or fire may occur:

The vehicle is shut down.

The parking brake is applied.

Let the engine and the drive motor cool completely.

Keep children away from the engine compartment.

Do not splash oils on the engine.

Do not allow water to come into contact with the engine compartment.

- › When performing operations related to the fuel system, observe the following precautions; otherwise fire may occur:

Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.

Do not smoke.

Do not operate near open flames.

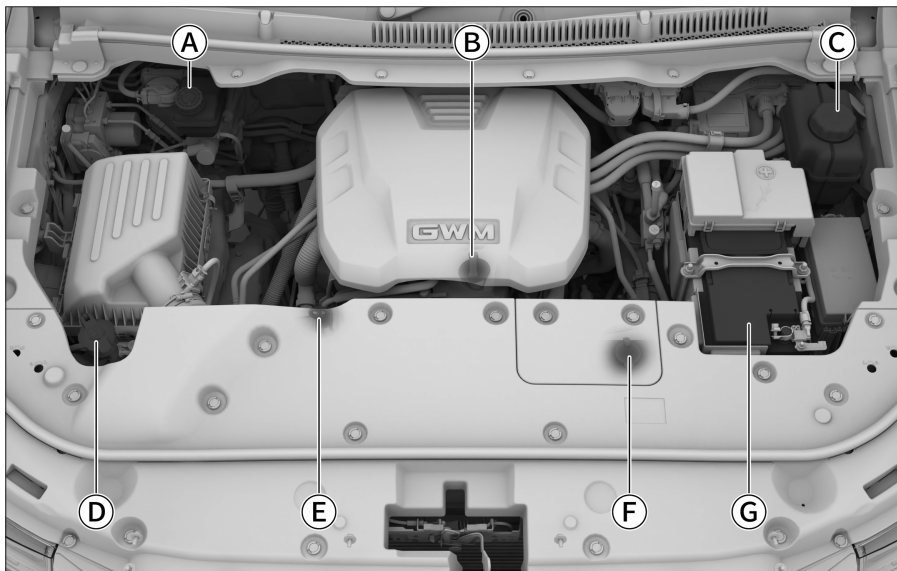
CAUTION

When adding oils, be careful not to misuse them. Otherwise, serious functional defects or damages to vehicle parts may be caused.

Engine compartment

Fluid level

Vehicle equipped with E20NA engine



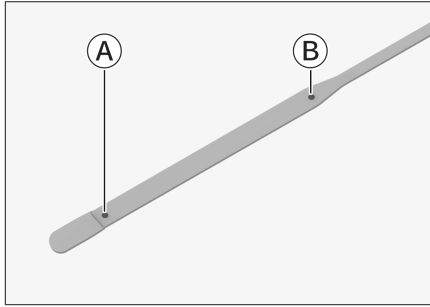
24FDA280D9E8

- Ⓐ Brake fluid tank
- Ⓑ Engine oil filler cap
- Ⓒ Battery motor coolant overflow tank
- Ⓓ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- Ⓔ Engine oil dipstick
- Ⓕ Engine coolant overflow tank
- Ⓖ Battery

Engine compartment

Engine oil

Check



Ⓐ Minimum

Ⓑ Maximum

Stop the vehicle on flat ground and warm up the engine to normal water temperature. Then, switch the power mode to OFF mode, and pull out the engine oil dipstick and clean it out after 10 minutes. After that, fully insert the oil dipstick to the oil dipstick conduit; finally pull out the oil dipstick and check the oil level after 10 s.

The oil level should be between the maximum and minimum levels marked on the oil dipstick.

If the engine oil level is close to or lower than the minimum level marked, top up engine oil until it is at the level between the maximum and minimum levels marked.

i NOTICE

- › The actual size and shape of the oil dipstick vary from engine model.

- › Check that the engine oil level is not less than 1/2 of the dipstick scale (between the upper limit and the lower limit) before the vehicle climbs an extreme slope; otherwise, add engine oil.

⚠ WARNING

- › When the engine is running, if you close contact with rotating parts such as the strap or fan, your hands, clothing, tools and so on, may be trapped into the rotating parts, resulting in severe consequences.
- › Care should be taken to prevent burns when checking or filling engine oil.
- › Keep the engine oil in a safe place when it is not in use. If the engine oil leaks into the ground or floats on the water surface, environment will be polluted.

Filling

Open the engine oil filler cap, and slowly pour the oil so as to avoid oil spill. Any oil overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled oil may cause damage to the compartment components.

Engine compartment

Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring engine performance and longevity. Therefore, it is important to use high-quality, purified oil. Please use only engine oil that meets specifications so as to ensure the vehicle performance.

Oil additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives, as additives cannot improve the performance and durability of the engine but product chemical reacts with engine oil causing oil invalid and damaging engine.

CAUTION

- › Therefore, check and replace engine oil on a regular basis. Otherwise, insufficient oil levels or deteriorated engine oil may cause poor lubrication of engine rotation parts, thereby cause sintering and hence damage to the engine.
- › The engine oil works to lubricate and cool. Oil levels go down over time even if you are driving normally, as a certain amount of engine oil in the lubricant piston and valve also ends up being spent in combustion chamber. Engine oil levels may go down depending on your specific drive conditions.
- › Take care not to exceed marked maximum levels when topping up engine oil.

Engine/electric drive system coolant

Check

The fluid level in the overflow tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the overflow tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the coolant level is lower than the minimum level marked, add coolant until the coolant level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the cooling system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

When the engine and electric drive system cool down, slowly open the lid to let the pressure out.

If the coolant spills, clean it up immediately to prevent parts or paint from being damaged.

Use only the coolant that meets the specifications.

WARNING

- › Never open the overflow tank cover when the engine compartment is at high temperature. There may still be some pressure inside the cooling system. Opening it at this point may cause burns or other injuries when heated coolant spurts out.

Engine compartment

⚠ CAUTION

- › The coolant contains ethylene glycol to lower its freezing point. Indiscriminate disposal may lead to water pollution.
- › When changing the engine/electric drive system coolant, contact the authorised service centre.

⚠ CAUTION

Before opening the tank cover, be sure to clean the cover and its surrounding area; otherwise, dust, sand and other foreign objects may be mixed into the brake fluid, resulting in decrease of braking performance or damage to brake components.

Brake fluid

Check

The fluid level in the tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum level marked, add new brake fluid until the fluid level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the braking system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in the fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any fluid overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled fluid may cause damage to the compartment components.

Only use brake fluid that meets specifications.

⚠ WARNING

- › Insufficient brake fluid levels can compromise brake performance and increase the risk of an accident.
- › Brake fluid is harmful to the human body and corrosive. In case of accidental contact, rinse it immediately with plenty of water. If you ingest it, go to a hospital immediately.

Windscreen washer fluid

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in washer fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any washer fluid overflow must be removed immediately.

You should use quality washer fluid for better cleaning capabilities and for anti-freeze protection in cold season.

i NOTICE

You should use the detergent with enough anti-freeze performance, if the ambient temperature is lower than 0 °C.

Engine compartment

The detergent should be placed out of the reach of children to avoid accidental ingestion.

The detergent is flammable and should be stored far from fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Please do not top up liquids such as soapy water into the tank in place of the detergent. Otherwise, the paint on vehicle body may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Do not top up washing fluid when the engine is at a high temperature, or when the engine is running. This is because the washing fluid contains alcohol. Spilling the fluid on the engine carries a risk of fire.

Please timely check whether the radiator, fan and other heat-radiating components are covered with dirt when the vehicle is driving in a bad environment (such as driving through water, sand and mud) each time. If they are covered by dirt, please go to a authorised service centre for inspection and cleaning timely.

Battery

The vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

When the battery shows low level, it is necessary to charge or replace the battery in time. Please head to authorised service centre for service if you need to replace the battery.

Radiator and fan

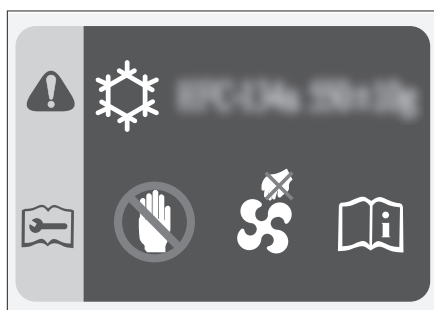
Regularly check the radiator, fan and other heat-radiating components in the engine compartment. If a component is particularly dirty or has foreign objects, please clean it in time. When you cannot determine whether it is working normally, please send your vehicle to a authorised service centre for checking.

Safety labels and signs

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Engine compartment warning label



6FC9C3B803CD

This label is located on the engine compartment front cover plate or the front grille trim plate to prompt you:

- › The type and filling amount of air conditioning refrigerant.
- › The cooling fan may be started at any time. Do not put your hand into the fan shield. Otherwise, when the fan is started unexpectedly, serious personal injury may be caused.

Radiator cover warning label



361F87CC1BAF

The label is on the radiator cap, which serves to remind you to refrain from opening the radiator cap when the engine is overheated. Otherwise, it may cause scald or the risk of coolant spillage.

Brake fluid reservoir warning sign

Type I



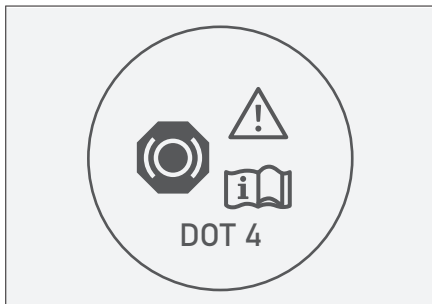
B38309AC44B0

6

Maintenance

Safety labels and signs

Type II



E872E8A31BA2

This sign is located on the brake fluid reservoir cap and used to remind you to take notice of the following before checking and adding the brake fluid: clean the cap before opening it and only allow refilling of the specified type of brake fluid stored in an airtight container.

Battery warning label

Type I



340CF5EC9B21

Type II



A86516835B47

Type III



378F054B09F7

This label is located on the battery to inform you of the following precautions before installing, removing, or inspecting the battery:

- › Children should be kept away from the battery.
- › The battery may produce flammable gases in the use or charging process, so it should be away from high-temperature heat source and open flame. Otherwise a fire or explosion is likely to occur.
- › The battery contains corrosive liquid.
- › Take necessary protective measures such as wearing goggles during operation.

Part replacement

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

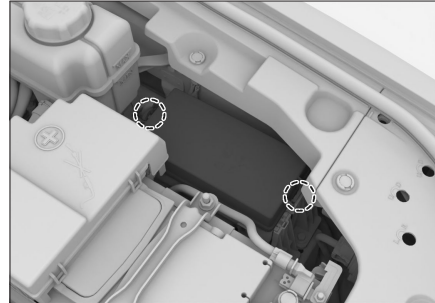
Fuses

If any electrical components do not work, the fuse may have been blown out. In this case, carry out the inspections based on the following operations and replace the fuses if necessary:

1. Turn off all electrical components.
2. Switch the power supply mode to the OFF position, apply the parking brake and disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
3. The fuses are located in the following positions:

> Located in the fuse box of the engine

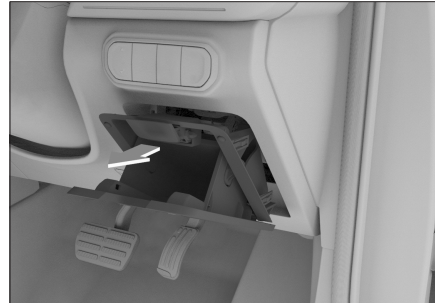
compartment



F57B1C823CEB

Press and hold the two pawls on the fuse box cover, and then pull up the fuse box cover to open the fuse box.

> Located in the instrument panel near the steering wheel



F2D9873FD5A7

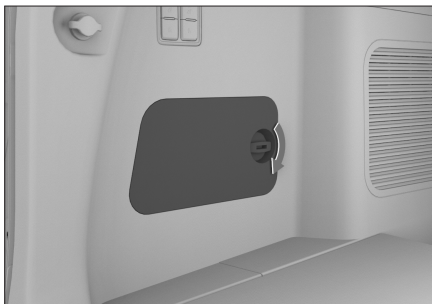
Remove the storage case (fuse box cover) shown in the figure and you can see the fuse.

If not necessary, it is not recommended that you remove this storage case yourself. Removing and installing it requires certain professional skills, please entrust the authorised service centre to handle it as much as possible.

> Located on the left side of the luggage

Part replacement

area



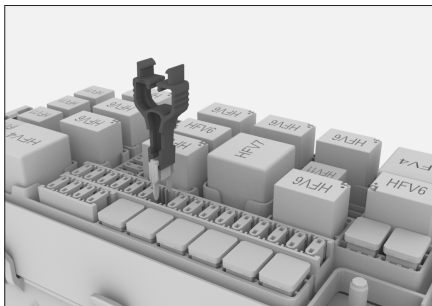
C6563501585D

Remove the fuse box cover and you can see the fuse.

CAUTION

- › Never let water or other liquids get into the fuse box. Otherwise, the electrical components will be damaged.
- › Install the fuse box cover on the fuse box correctly. Otherwise, penetration of moisture or dirt will affect the use of fuses.

4. Use the fuse clips to pull out the fuses. Find the fuse of the faulty electrical appliance according to the fuse label and check it.

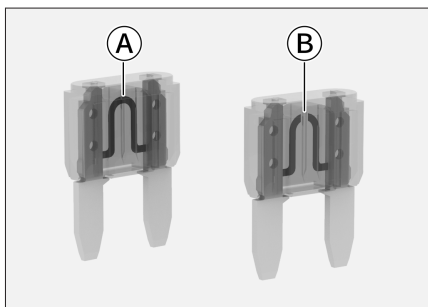


4E8A76B66E7F

CAUTION

- › Fuse clips and spare fuses are stored in the fuse box of engine compartment.
- › The fuse label is attached to the fuse box cover. With this label, the relationship between fuses and electrical components can be determined.
- › Since there may be more than one fuse causing the fault, check all the fuses that may cause the fault before the fault disappears. If the fault cannot be eliminated in the end, contact a authorised service centre for handling.

5. Check the wire inside the fuse. If it is blown out, replace it with a spare fuse with the same amperage.



6DC672024A26

- Ⓐ Normal fuse
- Ⓑ Blown fuse

WARNING

Using an inappropriate fuse, repairing the fuse, and bridging the circuit without the fuse may cause fire and serious injury.

Part replacement

- › Never install a fuse with a higher current rating. Damaged fuses can only be replaced with the fuses with the same current intensity (same colour and same printed text) and the same size.
- › Do not repair the damaged fuses.
- › Never use metal strips, paper clips or similar items instead of fuses.

6. Check whether the electrical components return to normal operation.

CAUTION

If the spare fuse with the same specifications is blown out again in a short time or the electrical components do not return to normal operation, the vehicle may have a serious electrical system fault. In this case, contact a authorised service centre for assistance duly.

Replacing the front wiper blade

Periodically check the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blade immediately if you find the following conditions:

- › Cracks or hardened areas are found on wiper blades.
- › Streaks or dirt are left after using the wiper.

NOTICE

When lifting and putting back the wiper, do not pull the wiper blade directly to avoid deformation or even damage.

1. Switch the power supply mode to OFF. Pull the wiper control combination switch towards you, and hold it for about 3 s. Then, the wiper will automatically reach the maintenance position, as shown in the figure.



D5A3114DAECB

2. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

CAUTION

- › To lift the wiper, be sure to bring the wiper to the maintenance position. Otherwise, the wiper will be damaged.
- › Do not open the bonnet while the wiper is lifted. Otherwise, the bonnet and the wiper will be damaged.
- › When the wiper arm is in the raised state, never switch the power supply mode. Otherwise, the wiper, the bonnet or the windscreen may be damaged.

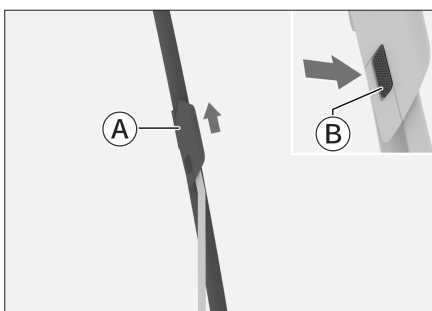
Part replacement

- › The maintenance position of the wiper is only used when the wiper blade is replaced and cannot be used for other purposes (for example, adjusting the wiper to the maintenance position and lifting it to prevent the wiper from freezing in the cold season).

3. Rotate the wiper blade in the direction indicated to maximize the angle between it and the plastic connector.



4. Take out the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



- Ⓐ Wiper blade
- Ⓑ Locking tab

Press down the locking tab and pull the wiper blade in the direction indicated at the same time until it separates from the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

5. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.

For easy installation, please refer to step 3 to maximize the included angle between the wiper blade and the plastic connector.

After installation, move the wiper up and down to ensure that it is installed in place.

6. Switch the power supply mode to ON or start the vehicle, and then the wiper will reset to initial state automatically.

Rear wiper blades replacement

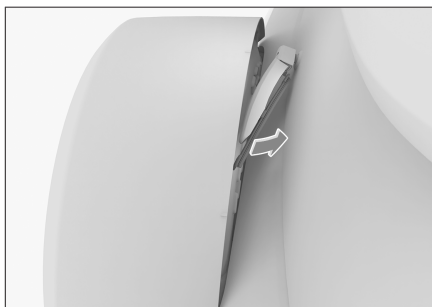
1. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

The rear wiper arm has a limited lift angle of about 45°. Do not over lift or use excessive force when lifting up. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage.

Part replacement

2. Pull the wiper blade in the direction shown in the figure until the wiper blade disengages from the wiper arm.



C2DE6E05F4F1

⚠ CAUTION

When the wiper blade is not installed, never place the wiper arm directly on the windscreen as this will damage the windscreen.

3. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.

车灯保养

车灯校准

新车出厂时，前组合灯已经校准。如果您经常用车辆携带重物，则前组合灯可能需要重新校准。前组合灯的校准工作请到 authorised service centre 处进行。

灯泡更换

所有车外灯均为 LED 光源，无法单独拆解或更换光源，如遇光源损坏或功能失效等问题，建议您尽快到 authorised service centre 处进行检修。

⚠ WARNING

- › 禁止对外部照明和信号装置进行改装。
- › 禁止加装强制性标准以外的外部照明和信号装置。

关于车灯起雾

在雨天行驶或洗车等条件下，车灯罩内可能起雾。这是因为车灯内部与外部空气的温差而造成，它与雨天时车窗玻璃起雾是同样的现象，功能上无问题。但是，车灯罩内附着大粒水滴时或车灯内积水时，请联系 authorised service centre 进行检修。

⚠ CAUTION

禁止使用化学溶剂或强力清洁剂擦洗外部车灯灯罩，以免对外部车灯灯罩造成损伤。

Vehicle maintenance

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre maintenance

To ensure safe driving, make sure that the tyres used suit your vehicle in their models and sizes with a good tread pattern and appropriate tyre pressure.

WARNING

- › Do not use tyres that are excessively worn, damaged, under-inflated, or over-inflated. Failure to do so can lead to accidents and personal injury.
- › You must abide by all manual instructions regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.
- › Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please handle it properly.

Off-road driving

Before off-road driving, you may lower the tyre pressure to adapt to off-road driving conditions. Therefore, after completing off-road driving, be sure to inflate the tyres to the standard tyre pressure. Insufficient inflation is the main cause of abnormal damage such as tyre cracking and blowouts.

After driving on off-road conditions, please check the wheels and tyres for any damage. Off-road driving may damage the wheels and tyres, leading to tyre failure, vehicle loss of control, or personal injury.

Tyre check

When checking the tyre inflation state, you should also check whether there is external damage, foreign objects or excessive wear, etc.

If any of the following circumstances are found, replace the tyre as soon as possible:

- › There is damage and bulges on the tyre tread or sides.
- › There is excessive wear to the tyre tread.

Tyre pressure

Maintaining appropriate tyre pressure levels can maximize vehicle handling ability, tyre tread life and driving comfort.

Vehicle maintenance

Under-inflated tyres wear out unevenly and affect the handling of the vehicle, fuel consumption (for fuel vehicle) and energy consumption (for electric vehicle), causing air leakage due to overheating.

Over-inflated tyres can lead to an uncomfortable ride as well as damage to the tyre due to uneven road surfaces, as well as uneven wear to the tyres.

It is recommended that you check the tyre pressure regularly, including the spare tyre (if fitted).

Tyre pressure should be measured when the tyre is cold. The measurement conducted when the vehicle is parked for more than 3 hours or its driving distance is not more than 1.5 km will get more accurate data. If you check the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot (after driving for a few kilometres), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the cold-state reading. This is normal. Do not deflate the tyre to reach the prescribed cold-state pressure. Failure to do so will lead to insufficient tyre pressure.

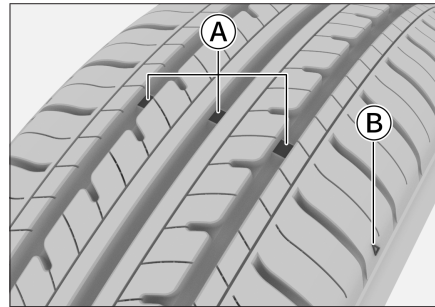
i NOTICE

Even if the tyres are in good condition, the tyre pressure may drop by 10 to 20 kPa every month. Please check them regularly.

Improving economy by ECO tyre pressure

By adjusting tyre pressure to ECO pressure (if available, it can be checked via the tyre pressure label), you can achieve more economical energy consumption. However, this may compromise riding comfort accordingly. Please make the adjustment according to your personal needs.

Tyre wear



Ⓐ Tyre wear mark

Ⓑ Tyre wear mark position figure

i NOTICE

Tyre wear mark position figure is a schematic diagram, which is used for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

You must replace tyres as soon as possible once they have been worn to the maximum tolerable limit.

Vehicle maintenance

Continuing to use tyres with shallow tread patterns or those that have exposed wear indicators can lead to prolonged braking distances, steering failure, and tyre ruptures, all of which can easily cause accidents.

If you find tyre wear uneven, or feel a certain continuous vibration when driving, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

When installing new tyres, perform dynamic tyre balance to ensure ride comfort and to prolong tyre service life.

Tyre rotation

To extend the lifespan of your tyres and ensure even wear, it is recommended to check tyre pressure and wear at least once a month. If the tread depth difference is 1.5 mm or more, a tyre rotation is necessary.

The tyre rotation should be done by the professionals and it is recommended to be done by the authorised service centre.

Wheel balance

Unbalanced wheels can affect vehicle control performance and tyre service life. Even under the normal use conditions, the wheels may lose their balance. Therefore, the wheels should be balanced according to the wheel dynamic balance parameters.

Avoid tyre flatness

If the vehicle is parked in a high temperature environment for an extended period, the tyres may experience slight deformation at the contact points with the ground. This is known as "tyre flatness" and is considered normal. However, when the vehicle is running, the vehicle body and steering wheel may shake. As the mileage increases, the tyre will get hot and return to its original shape, and the shake will gradually disappear.

When the vehicle is stationary for an extended period of time, the tyre flatness can be minimized by any of the following methods:

- › The tyre pressure can be increased (by about 300 kPa), which cannot be used for normal driving. Before driving, the tyre pressure must be restored to the recommended tyre pressure.
- › Vehicles must be moved at least once every 30 days (preferably every 15 days), and the movement must involve rotating the original point of force application by at least 90°.

Replacing tyres and wheels

- › If tyres need to be replaced, new tyres should have the same specifications as the original ones, with the same or higher load index and speed rating.

Vehicle maintenance

- › The original tyres provided with this vehicle represent the optimal choice for handling, comfort, and economy. It is recommended that they should be replaced with original tyres at an authorized Great Wall Motor service station.
- › Tyres should be replaced in pairs (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres should be replaced simultaneously). Failure to do so may affect braking and handling performance of the vehicle.
- › If wheels need to be replaced, new wheels should have the same specifications and sizes (such as diameter and offset) as the original ones. Original wheels can be purchased at an authorized Great Wall Motor service station.

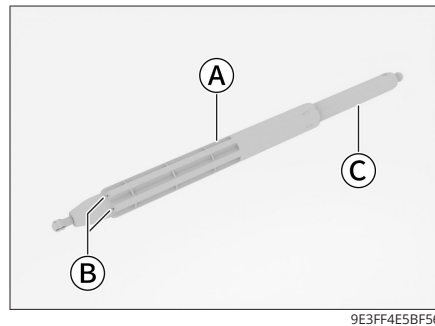
WARNING

- › Do not mix tyres from different manufacturers, or with different models, tread patterns, or tread wear levels.
- › Do not mix tyres with different structures, such as radial and bias ply.
- › Do not mix summer, all-season and winter tyres.

- › Ensure that tyres and wheels with correct specifications and sizes are used for replacement. Unsuitable tyres or wheels installed on the vehicle will affect its handling and stability, which may lead to accidents like collisions.

Tailgate strut maintenance

Tailgate strut



- Ⓐ Protective tube
- Ⓑ Protective tube exhaust vent
- Ⓒ Cylinder barrel

NOTICE

The tailgate strut is only a guide. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Vehicle maintenance

Advices on maintenance

Silt, dirt, and foreign objects tend to gather around the rod cylinder and the exhaust port of the protective tube, which can easily infiltrate the interior and lead to seal failure. Additionally, stones or debris may become lodged between the strut and the tailgate. Closing the tailgate may result in problems like oil leakage, unusual noises, or even damage to the strut.

It is recommended to periodically open the tailgate, clear away sediment, stones, and other debris from the strut surface, and clean it with a rag and water.

⚠ CAUTION

The maintenance frequency depends on the daily driving condition and the use frequency of the tailgate.

If you are driving through sandy areas (such as deserts, unpaved roads, construction sites), it is recommended that you increase the maintenance frequency.

Protection films for new vehicles

After purchasing a new vehicle, remove the protection films in time. For example, the positions of water cutting, A-pillar trim plate, B-pillar trim plate, etc. outside the vehicle, and the positions of the interior handle and chrome plating trim strip in the vehicle.

Sunroof maintenance

Daily maintenance frequency

The daily maintenance frequency depends on the driving condition and the use frequency of the sunroof.

If you are driving through sandy areas or areas with high rainfall levels, it is recommended that you increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

⚠ CAUTION

If the sunroof is not maintained on schedule, it can lead to sunroof leaks or abnormal noise. Adjust maintenance frequency depending on the conditions of use. For instance, in sandy zones or in seasons when there is higher usage, you should increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

Vehicle maintenance

Routine maintenance procedure

Dust and impurities may be concentrated in the sunroof seal strip, mechanical parts or rails, which may result in an abnormal sound or malfunction of the sunroof and also clog the drainage system. Regularly open the sunroof, remove dust and impurities, and use clean cloth and water to wipe the sunroof seal strip surface, as well as regularly apply grease on the mechanical parts for maintenance.

Open up the sunroof and check that the sunroof does not show signs of being obstructed in the course of operation. If there seems to be obstruction, please head to a authorised service centre for services.

CAUTION

- › When the sunroof malfunctions, please head to a authorised service centre as soon as possible for check and maintenance.
- › In cold icing conditions, do not try to forcibly open the sunroof to prevent damage to the sunroof motor and sunroof seals. You must wait for the interior temperature to rise and for seal strips of sunroof and sunroof opening to defrost before you try to open the sunroof.

- › Open the sunroof after washing the vehicle in cold icing conditions. Use a piece of soft, dry cloth to wipe dry seal strips of sunroof before driving.
- › The sunroof must be closed fully before the vehicle enters a car wash facility. Do not allow water jets to be pointed directly at seal strips of sunroof. Keep off the water from vehicle due to the deformation of the seal strip under the pressure of the high pressure water column, as a result, it may damage the seal strip.
- › When driving on bumpy roads or in hilly areas, do not open the sunroof fully for extended periods of time as the vibrations may cause damage to internal sunroof components.
- › In the rainy season, step up checks for any sand or dust on seal strips of sunroof, and remove them in a timely manner to ensure good sealing performance of sunroof.

Exterior maintenance

Vehicle wash

A regular vehicle wash helps to protect its appearance. Please regularly clean your vehicle.

Vehicle maintenance

i NOTICE

The longer such corrosive substances as insects, bird droppings, tree resins, road dust, industrial fallout, tar, soot, and snow melt salt remain on the body surface, the greater the damage to the body paint. High temperatures (for example, sun exposure) will further aggravate the corrosion effect.

To prevent damage to the vehicle paint, immediately remove corrosive substances on the body surface. Do not wait until your vehicle is due for a complete wash.

Wash your vehicle in a shady spot and not under direct sunlight. If the vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long time, you must move the vehicle to a shady spot before cleaning, and wait until the body surface is cooled down.

Cleaning methods

1. Check that there are no fallen leaves, bird droppings, etc., on the vehicle body.

Remove these dirt, and then rinse immediately with clean water so as not to damage the vehicle body surface finish.

2. Wash the vehicle thoroughly with water to remove surface dust.

Clean your vehicle using water and a soft brush, a sponge, or a piece of soft cloth.

3. After washing and cleaning the vehicle, use a special leather or soft towel to dry off the vehicle. Do not allow the vehicle to dry out naturally as this may cause the vehicle body to lose its luster or generate water stains.

! CAUTION

- › Do not use acid, strong alkaline, strong chemical cleaning agents to wash the vehicle. Prolonged soaking by strong detergents will cause serious corrosion of the body paint and bright stripes, affecting the appearance of the vehicle.
- › After washing the vehicle or driving through flooded road, depress the brake pedal lightly to make sure that the brake is functioning normally.
- › When washing the vehicle in cold season, do not flush the gaps in the keyholes or doors, etc. to prevent the lock hole or the seal strip from freezing.
- › When cleaning the vehicle, do not open the fuel tank door to flush its inside.
- › Before washing the vehicle, be sure to raise the windows completely and do not flush it with the high-pressure water against the glass edge. The high-pressure water flow may warp the seals, making the seals unable to prevent the water from entering the cabin.

Vehicle maintenance

Waxing

Waxing is conducive to vehicle maintenance, and the vehicle must be thoroughly cleaned before waxing to ensure the effect of waxing.

There are many types of car wax available on the market, each with different properties, so choose carefully. Using the wrong wax could cause paint discolouration rather than protecting the vehicle's body.

Under normal circumstances, you should consider the purpose and properties of the car wax, the age of the vehicle, the paint colour, and the driving environment when choosing a wax. For details, contact the authorised service centre or professionals.

Repairing paint surfaces

Always check whether there are any paint peeled off or scratches on the vehicle body surface. If such a phenomenon occurs, repair the surface immediately to prevent corrosion of the metal in the damaged area.

Repair paint can only be used to repair small areas of peeled-off paint or scratches. Large areas of peeled-off paint should be repaired by professionals.

Maintenance of matte lacquer finish

If your vehicle is equipped with matte paint, please note the following during maintenance and use of the vehicle:

- › Never use automatic vehicle washing equipment with hard brushes to clean the vehicle. Hard brushes can damage the paint surface. It is recommended to use a soft sponge, neutral cleaning agents and plenty of water to manually clean the vehicle.
- › When cleaning the body, use a gentle wiping and washing method to avoid excessive force or friction on the body; otherwise, the matte effect will be changed, and the gloss of the body will be uneven.
- › Frequent vehicle washes for a long time will cause the paint gloss to increase or uneven.
- › Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- › Please do not use paint cleaning agents, sanding materials, or polishing products such as polishing wax to treat the paint surface. Failure to do so will damage the paint surface.
- › If you accidentally apply the vehicle wax to the paint surface, please remove it immediately with silicone resin remover, and use gentle force to avoid excessive force during operation.

Vehicle maintenance

- › Avoid resin, grease and other lipids in contact with the paint, as this can leave marks.
- › Use asphalt remover to remove tar stains on the vehicle body.
- › Remove insects and bird droppings and other dirt on the body in time. Use water to soft them before cleaning, or wash them carefully with a high-pressure water gun. If this kind of dirt has firmly adhered to the body, you can spray shellac remover before cleaning.

Liquid leakage check

To ensure driving safety, it is recommended to check for fuel, oil or other liquid leaks under the vehicle before each driving. In case of the apparent leakage, contact the authorised service centre for service.

Cavity anti-corrosion wax instructions

Cavity wax injection anti-corrosion technology is applied to the inner cavities of vehicle doors, bonnets, sill beams, and other parts. This technology effectively isolates water and corrosive substances from metal, enhancing the vehicle's durability and corrosion resistance, and extending its service life.

When the vehicle is driving on a high temperature or severely bumpy road, it's normal for excess yellow waxes in the cavity to flow out through the water hole. You can use hot water plus the proper amount of commercially available cleaning agent to wipe and rinse them.

Interior maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents may contain harmful substances that could cause injuries. For cleaning the interior, it is recommended to open the doors or windows. Use only cleaning agents that are made for vehicle cleaning and follow the instructions on the package.

i NOTICE

- › Do not allow water or any liquid come into contact with instrument panel, floor or electrical components when cleaning the interior as water will damage those components.
- › Do not clean the vehicle floor with water to avoid vehicle body corrosion.

Carpets

Regularly clean carpets with a vacuum cleaner. Allowing dirt to remain on carpets will increase wear on them.

Vehicle maintenance

Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition. Use a foaming detergent to clean carpets. To keep carpets as dry as possible, do not add water to the foaming detergent.

Textile

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt from the textile.

If the textile becomes contaminated, clean it promptly to prevent the stains from spreading. Use the following methods to gently remove as much of the stains as possible, depending on its condition.

For liquid stains, gently blot the stains with a paper towel to absorb as much of the stains as possible.

For solid dry stains, first remove as much of the residue as possible, and then use a vacuum cleaner to clean up the remaining stains.

Based on the cleaning progress of the stains, please use the following methods for further cleaning:

1. Soak a clean white cotton cloth that will not shed lint with water.
2. Screw the cotton cloth to half dry (no dripping is advisable).
3. Gently scrub from the edge of the stains towards the centre until no more dirt transfers to the cotton.
4. Dry naturally.

NOTICE

For stubborn stains, use mild, neutral soapy water or a fabric-specific detergent. Be sure to follow the detergent's instructions. After cleaning, repeat the steps to rinse off any excess soapy water or detergent, and allow the fabric to dry naturally.

CAUTION

- › Avoid using sharp objects to scrape or rub surface dirt, as this may damage the fabric.
- › Do not use strong solvents such as glass cleaner.
- › Oil and other stubborn stains can be challenging to fully remove, so be sure to take precautions to protect the fabric.

Leather

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt, especially from creases and seams.

Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with water, and then buff it up with another soft dry cloth. Use a leather cleaner for deeper cleaning.

Vehicle maintenance

Wipe off the leather cleaner with a soft dry cloth as soon as possible after cleaning with the leather cleaner. Do not leave a cloth with leather cleaner on any part of the interior trim for a long time. Some leather cleaners may cause the resin or fibres of the interior trim textile to discolour or break.

Do not use liquid containing organic substances like alcohol to clean leather; do not use petrol, acidic solution or alkaline solution to clean leather.

Do not use brushes, hard sponges and other tools with rough surfaces when cleaning.

Do not use silicone or gel cushions on leather surfaces, as they can cause the leather to harden and crack.

Suedette

Always use a soft brush, a piece of dry cloth or a vacuum cleaner to remove dust from the suedette surface.

If the suedette surface becomes stained, the following operating instructions should be observed:

- › Before removing the stain, first remove any matter adhering to the stain. If the stain on the surface is thick (yoghurt, jam, etc.), use a spoon or a cardboard to remove it; if it is a liquid stain, use white absorbent paper or a sponge.
- › Use a clean and dry white rag or wrung out sponge for wiping.

- › When cleaning the suedette surface, do not allow the surface to get too wet. If necessary, wash a rag or a sponge several times during wiping.
- › Remove local stains immediately. To avoid spreading the stain further, wipe the stain from its edge to its centre.
- › Do not wipe the stain hard, as this can cause it to spread or penetrate deeper into the material.
- › When using a special cleaner, do not pour the cleaner directly onto the suedette surface.
Do not use alkaline or alcoholic solvent cleaners.
- › Once the suedette has dried completely its surface can be restored to its original state by brushing it lightly with a soft brush.

Rubber parts

Exposure to the environment may cause the surface of rubber parts to become soiled and lose their shine. Rubber parts should be cleaned regularly with rubber conditioners, especially worn rubber parts.

To prevent damage and reduce noise, avoid using conditioners that contain silicone for routine maintenance of rubber seals. Instead, clean them with water or a suitable conditioner.

Vehicle maintenance

Plastic parts

i NOTICE

Liquids containing alcohol or solvents (such as nitro thinner, cooling cleaner, fuel, perfume and cosmetics) can damage the surface of plastic parts. Clean them with a soft microfibre cloth (slightly moistened with water).

Plastic parts include but are not limited to the following: vehicle light covers, air outlet assemblies and interior painted parts.

Windows

Clean the inside and outside of windows with glass cleaner and dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

! CAUTION

If a heating wire is attached to the inside of the rear window, excessive wiping may cause it to move or break. Therefore, wipe lightly along the direction of the heating wire.

Seat belts

- › Use mild warm soapy water to clean soiled seat belts. Do not use bleach, dyes or cleaning solvents. Such products may reduce the durability of seat belts.

Allow the seat belt to dry naturally in the air before driving.

- › Too much dust accumulated inside the seat belt guide ring will cause the seat belt to retract more slowly. Scrub the inner side of the guide ring with mild warm soapy water.

Anti-corrosion measures

Factors that affect the corrosion rate

- › The accumulation of dirt, dust, or snow in the lower part of the vehicle body can accelerate corrosion.
- › Damage to the coating or other protective layer, arising from sand attacking or minor accident, may quicken corrosion.
- › If the vehicle runs in areas where relative humidity is high or temperature is above freezing point, it may quicken corrosion.
- › There is much salinity in the air and salt on the road of industrial pollution areas and coastal regions, which may quicken the paint corrosion.
- › Rising temperature may quicken the corrosion of poorly ventilated parts.

Protecting the vehicle from corrosion

- › Park the vehicle in a well-ventilated and dry place.
- › Regularly use clean cold water and neutral vehicle detergent to wash the vehicle so as to keep it clean.

Vehicle maintenance

- › Regularly check whether the paint is damaged. If damaged, repair it as soon as possible.
- › Regularly check the lower part of the vehicle body. If there is sand, dirt, snow, ice or other coverings, clean them with water as soon as possible.
- › Check the interior of the vehicle frequently to ensure that the carpet is dry and clean.
When transporting chemicals, cleaning agents, fertilizers, salt, etc., take special care and use appropriate containers for transportation. If splashes or leaks are found, clean them immediately and keep them dry.
- › Keep the door drain hole open so as to avoid water logging.
- › If bird droppings, resin, insect carcasses, asphalt, cement, industrial dust, coal tar, gasoline, benzene or other similar objects are accumulated on the body surface, clean them as soon as possible.
- › If you always drive on a deicing salt covered road, saline-alkali land, sea-side and other roads containing salt, please wash off the attachments at the bottom of the vehicle at least once a month, and take special maintenance measures, such as chassis armour.
- › If you drive regularly on sand road, please consider installing mudguard behind the wheels.

Long-term storage of the vehicle

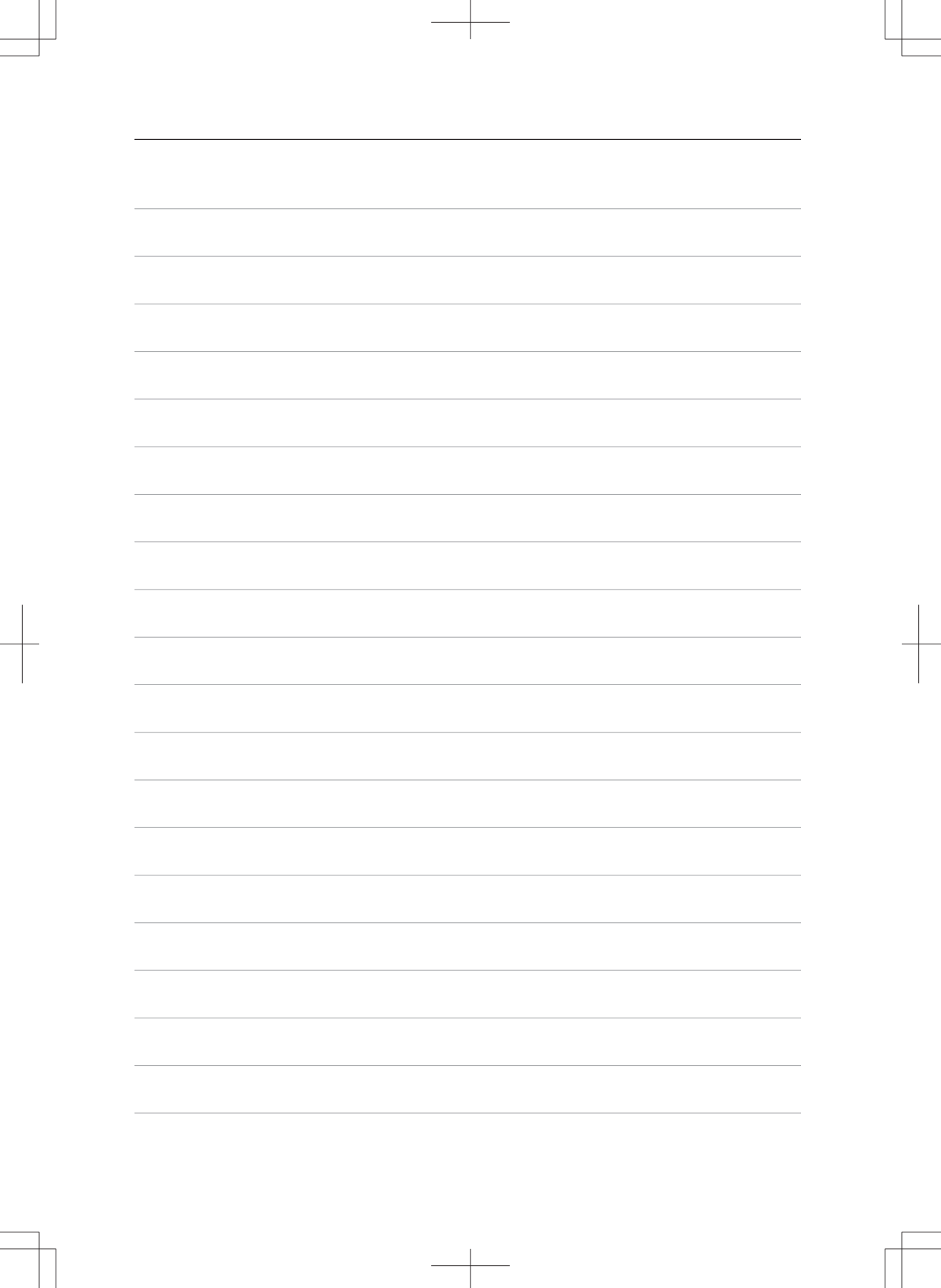
The parking position of the vehicle should help to prevent deterioration of the vehicle condition and facilitate the restarting of the vehicle. If possible, please park your vehicle indoor.

If you need to store the vehicle for an extended period (one month or longer), please take the following steps beforehand:

- › Top up fuel.
- › Clean and dry vehicle exterior thoroughly.
- › Clean the inside of the vehicle to ensure it is clean and tidy.
- › Release the parking brake, and use the wheel chock to hold against the tyres.
- › Open vehicle windows on one side slightly (if the vehicle is to be parked indoors).
- › Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
- › Use a stowed towel or piece of cloth to cushion the wiper blade from the windscreen glass.
- › To reduce the risk of sticking, silicone lubricant should be applied on all door seals.

Vehicle maintenance

- › Use a vehicle cover made of porous cotton to cover the vehicle. Because plastic materials such as non-porous materials will accumulate moisture, and is likely to damage the vehicle body paint.
- › The vehicle shall be stored in a ventilated environment, without flammable and explosive materials around.
- › If possible, start the vehicle once every month, and the system will monitor the battery level automatically. If the battery level is low, the engine will run into idle charging mode. When the engine shuts down, charging is finished. If the battery level is normal, the engine will not start and you can lock the vehicle and leave the vehicle.
- › The power system is behind the luggage area, so do not store flammable, combustible and corrosive objects here.
- › To ensure good startability and dynamic performance, we recommend you that drive at least 2 hours every month.



7

Technical data

Vehicle identification.....328

Overall parameters330

Vehicle identification

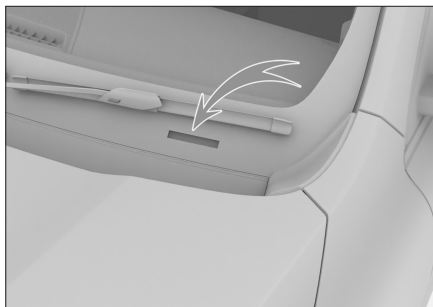
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle identification number

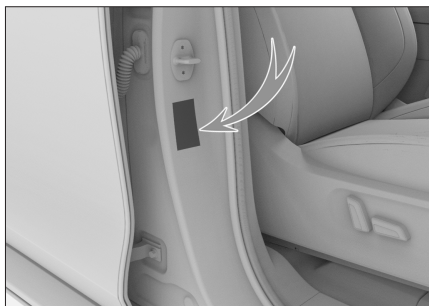
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the vehicle identity code and unique to every vehicle. It is marked in the following locations:

The upper left side of the instrument panel



The vehicle nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located under the buckle of the right front door pillar.



Front section of the right vehicle frame rail



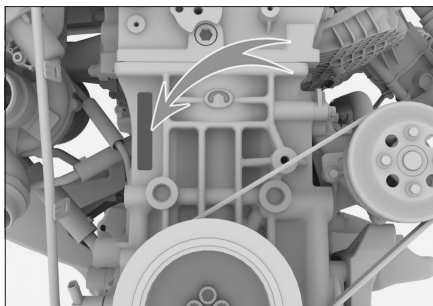
i NOTICE

Due to different countries and regions, some models have the vehicle identification number marked on the front section of the left vehicle frame rail. Refer to the actual vehicle.

i NOTICE

After using the diagnostic tool to connect the on-board diagnosis connector, you can read the vehicle identification number in the electronic control unit (ECU).

Engine number (E20NA)



The engine number is marked on the engine block, as shown in the figure.


i NOTICE

For easy viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached to the outlet pipe above the engine intake manifold.

Overall parameters

Basic parameters

For basic parameters such as the overall dimensions, quality, fuel consumption, emission standard, maximum speed, see the official vehicle documents attached to the vehicle.

 **CAUTION**

Unless specifically stated or separately listed parameters, all the parameters listed in this manual are applicable to the standard vehicles. For specially equipped vehicles and those vehicles produced for other countries, some of the parameters may be different. Parameters in the official vehicle documents attached to the vehicle shall always prevail.

Power parameters

Engine

Item	Data
Engine model	E20NA
Engine type	Turbocharged gasoline engine
Maximum net power/speed (kW/rpm)	180/5500 to 6000
Maximum net torque/speed (N•m/rpm)	380/1700 to 4000
Maximum gradeability [%]	75

Drive motor assembly

Drive motor model	TZ290XH003
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Peak power/speed/torque [kW/rpm/N•m]	78/7000/268

Generator assembly

Generator model	TZ290XH003
Rated voltage [V]	338.5

Traction battery

Traction battery model	PE338005B	PE336005D
Type	Ternary lithium ion battery	Ternary lithium ion battery

Overall parameters

Rated voltage [V]	338.56	335.8
Rated capacity [Ah]	5.21	5
Working temperature [°C]	-30 to 60	-35 to 65

Tyre specifications

Items		Data
Standard tyre (spare tyre) specifications		265/60R18 114H 265/50R20 111H
Tyre pressure		See the tyre pressure label on the lower part of the left front door pillar lock.
Tyre chain	Specifications	Tyre chain of model T150 TPU
	Installation location	Rear wheel

Wheel parameters

Items			Data
Dynamic balance parameters	Unilateral [g]		≤8
	Bilateral sum [g]		≤15
Alignment parameters	Rear wheel	Rear wheel camber	0° ± 30' (left and right difference ≤ 30')
		Rear wheel toe-in	0° ± 30' (left and right difference ≤ 30')
	Front wheel	Kingpin caster	3.8° ± 30' (left and right difference ≤ 30')
		Front-wheel camber	12' ± 30' (left and right difference ≤ 30')
		Front wheel toe-in	5' ± 5' (left and right difference ≤ 2')
		Kingpin inclination	12.3° ± 30' (left and right difference ≤ 30')

Brake parameters

Items		Data
Brake pedal	Free travel [mm]	10±1
Front brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2

Overall parameters

Items		Data
Rear brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Front brake disc	Minimum thickness [mm]	31
Rear brake disc	Minimum thickness [mm]	20

Seat parameters

Items		Data
Design position of seat sliding rail		Move the 40 mm forwards from the last position.
Design angle of seat backrest	Front seat	25°
	Second row seat	Seats on both sides 25 ° Middle seat 21 °
	Third row seat	20°
Common angle of seat backrest	Front seat	25°
	Second row seat	Seats on both sides 25 ° Middle seat 21 °
	Third row seat	20°

Fluid parameters

Specifications of E20NA engine oil

To ensure the performance and the service life of the engine, we recommend that customers use the SP 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil recommended by the OEM. If the genuine engine oil cannot be purchased in your area, we recommend you to use the following engine oil:

- › If you choose API (American Petroleum Institute) standard oils, we recommend you to use SP 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil with medium-low ash content.
- › If you choose ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard oils, we recommend you to use C5 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil.

Overall parameters

Engine oil capacity

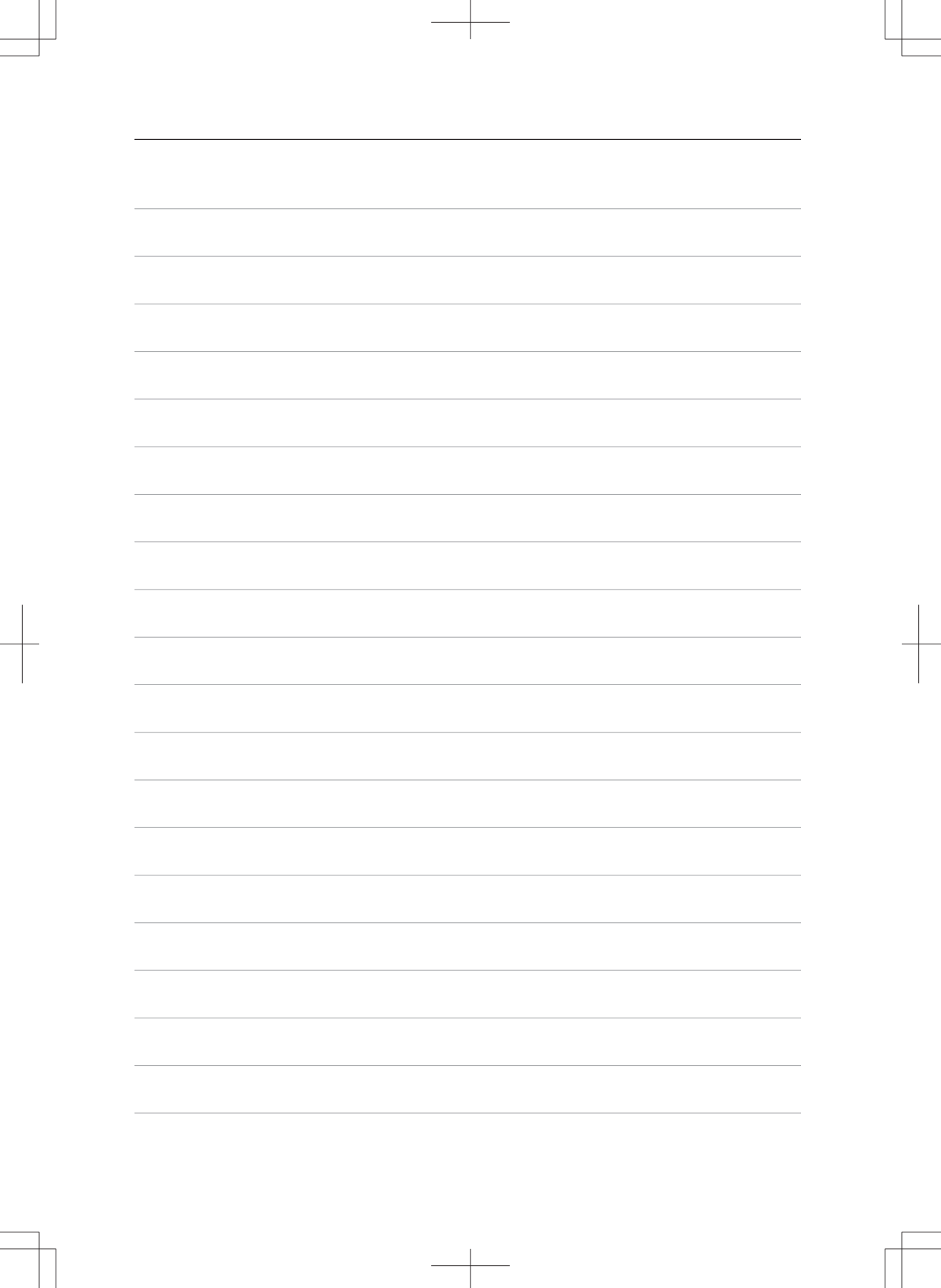
Engine model	Capacity [L] (reference value)	
	When changing both the oil and the oil filter element	When only changing the oil
E20NA	5.9 ± 0.1	5.5 ± 0.1

Other types of fluids

Fluid type	Specifications	Capacity [L] (reference value)
Front main re-ducer oil	DUAL 9 FE 75W-90	1.05 ± 0.05 (without front axle differential lock)
Rear main re-ducer oil		0.9 ± 0.05 (with front axle differential lock)
Transfer case oil	MERCON LV	2.4 ± 0.1
Transmission oil	GWM ATF 9	1.7 ± 0.1
Coolant (engine system)	Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (regions other than alpine regions)	6.5 (recommended filling amount for maintenance)
Coolant (electric drive system)	Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (alpine regions)	10.2 ± 0.5
Brake fluid	DOT4 synthetic brake fluid	7.1 ± 0.5
Windscreen washer fluid	--	0.9 ± 0.1
		3.6 ± 0.2

i NOTICE

The above fluid capacity is the design value. The actual amount may slightly vary with the products, equipment and climate factors.



8

Index

Alphabetical index.....336

Alphabetical index

A

A/C system

A/C control panel 75

A/C vent 83

AC setting interface 77

Airbag

Front passenger side airbag
switch 252

Side airbags 253

Airbags

Curtain airbags 254

Front airbags 250

All-terrain control system 135

Anti-lock brake system 193

B

Battery 304

Bottle holder 93

Brake fluid 303

Braking force assist system 194

Break-in period 112

C

Catalytic converter 197

Child locks 29

Child restraint system

Fixing points for child seat 257

Recommended child seat type 258

Comfortable braking 133

Crankcase emission control unit 198

D

Differential lock 148

Door lock

Door lock settings 22

Door locks

Door handle lock and unlock 23

Locking and unlocking with central
control buttons 24

Locking and unlocking with key but-
tons 24

Locking and unlocking with the me-
chanical key 25

Locking in emergencies 25

Tailgate 26

Unlocking with the interior handle 24

Dynamic stability assist system 196

E

Electric drive system coolant 302

Electric side step 31

Electronic braking force distribution sys-
tem 194

Electronic parking brake 123

Electronic Power Steering System 195

Electronic stability control 195

Emergency shut-off system 266

Engine compartment 299

Engine hood 43

Engine oil 301

Engine overheating 287

Engine system coolant 302

Event data recorder 267

Expert mode 138

Exterior maintenance 317

F

Fatigue driving warning system 165

Fluid level 300

Fluid parameters 332

Fuses 307

H

Head up display 199

HHC (Hill-start hold control) 194

Alphabetical index

Hill descent control system 192

Horn 59

I

Indicator lights 205

Instrument panel 201

Interior maintenance 320

Interior rearview mirror

Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror 55

J

Jump starting the vehicle 285

K

Key 18

L

Light control

Daytime running light 67

Emergency flashers 68

Interior lights 69

Light control combination switch 64

Light height adjustment 68

Light settings 63

Vehicle backlight brightness adjustment 69

Lights control

Front fog lights auxiliary lighting 68

M

Mobile phone wireless charging 85

O

Off-road cruise control 141

OFF ROAD mode 145

On-board diagnostic system 198

Oxygen sensor 197

P

Parking assist system

Anti-collision radar 154

Around view monitor 155

Intelligent parking system 157

Parking settings 161

Reverse tracking 160

Power battery recovery 114

Power management system 215

Power parameters 330

Power supply mode switching 119

Power supply socket 93

Protection films for new vehicles 316

R

Radiator and fan 304

Rearview mirrors

Side mirrors adjustment 55

Refuelling 45

Replacing the spare tyre 276

Rollover prevention system 194

Roof rack 61

S

Seat

Third-row seat 51

Seat belt 245

Seat parameters 332

Seats

Front seat 48

Front seats ventilation 53

Headrests 47

Seats settings 52

Second row seats adjustment 49

Second row seat ventilation 54

Alphabetical index

Secondary collision mitigation system 194

Side mirrors

Side mirrors settings 56

Starting the vehicle 121

Steering wheel 58

Steering wheel assist mode 134

Steering wheel unlock 119

Steering wheel welcome/memory 59

Sunroof

Opening and closing the panoramic sunroof 38

Opening and closing the sunshade 39

Sunroof maintenance 316

Sun visor 88

T

Tailgate strut maintenance 315

The Tank turning 143

Towing 289

Traction control system 194

Turbocharger 198

Tyre maintenance 312

Tyre pressure monitoring system 163

V

Vanity mirror 88

Vehicle anti-theft system 264

Vehicle identification number 328

Vehicle shutdown 122

Voice assistant 236

W

Wading detection 147

Warning lights 205

Windows 34

Windscreen washer fluid 303

Wiper control

Automatic wiper 71